

Package ‘Giotto’

July 31, 2020

Title Spatial single-cell transcriptomics toolbox

Version 0.3.6.9018

Description Toolbox to process, analyze and visualize spatial single-cell expression data.

License MIT + file LICENSE

Encoding UTF-8

LazyData true

URL <https://rubd.github.io/Giotto/>, <https://github.com/RubD/Giotto>

BugReports <https://github.com/RubD/Giotto/issues>

RoxygenNote 7.1.1

Depends base (>= 3.5.1),
utils (>= 3.5.1),
R (>= 3.5.1)

Imports data.table (>= 1.12.2),
deldir,
ggplot2 (>= 3.1.1),
Matrix,
magick,
matrixStats (>= 0.55.0),
methods,
uwot (>= 0.0.0.9010),
cowplot (>= 0.9.4),
grDevices,
graphics,
RColorBrewer (>= 1.1-2),
dbscan (>= 1.1-3),
farver (>= 2.0.3),
ggalluvial (>= 0.9.1),
scales (>= 1.0.0),
ComplexHeatmap (>= 1.20.0),
qvalue (>= 2.14.1),
lfa (>= 1.12.0),
igraph (>= 1.2.4.1),
irlba,
plotly,
parallel,
reticulate (>= 1.14),

magrittr,
 limma,
 ggdendro,
 smfishHmrf,
 devtools,
 reshape2,
 ggraph,
 Rcpp,
 Rfast,
 Rtsne (≥ 0.15),
 rlang ($\geq 0.4.3$),
 R.utils,
 fitdistrplus,
 quadprog

Suggests knitr,
 rmarkdown,
 MAST,
 scran ($\geq 1.10.1$),
 png,
 FactoMineR,
 tiff,
 biomaRt,
 trendsceek,
 multinet ($\geq 3.0.2$),
 RTriangle ($\geq 1.6-0.10$)

biocViews

VignetteBuilder knitr

LinkingTo Rcpp,
 RcppArmadillo

Remotes lambdamoses/smfishhmrf-r

R topics documented:

addCellIntMetadata	7
addCellMetadata	8
addCellStatistics	9
addGeneMetadata	10
addGenesPerc	10
addGeneStatistics	11
addGiottoImage	12
addGiottoImageToSpatPlot	12
addHMRF	13
addNetworkLayout	13
addStatistics	14
adjustGiottoMatrix	15
annotateGiotto	16
annotateSpatialGrid	17
annotateSpatialNetwork	17
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups	18
binSpect	19

calculateHVG	20
calculateMetaTable	22
calculateMetaTableCells	23
cellProximityBarplot	23
cellProximityEnrichment	24
cellProximityHeatmap	25
cellProximityNetwork	26
cellProximitySpatPlot	28
cellProximitySpatPlot2D	29
cellProximitySpatPlot3D	31
cellProximityVisPlot	33
changeGiottoInstructions	36
changeImageBg	36
clusterCells	37
clusterSpatialCorGenes	40
combCCcom	40
combineCellProximityGenes	41
combineCPG	42
combineMetadata	44
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol	44
createCrossSection	45
createGiottoImage	46
createGiottoInstructions	47
createGiottoObject	48
createGiottoVisiumObject	50
createHeatmap_DT	51
createMetagenes	52
createNearestNetwork	53
createSpatialDefaultGrid	55
createSpatialDelaunayNetwork	56
createSpatialEnrich	57
createSpatialGrid	58
createSpatialKNNnetwork	59
createSpatialNetwork	60
create_average_detection_DT	61
create_average_DT	62
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs	62
create_crossSection_object	63
create_screepplot	64
crossSectionGenePlot	65
crossSectionGenePlot3D	66
crossSectionPlot	67
crossSectionPlot3D	68
decide_cluster_order	69
detectSpatialCorGenes	70
detectSpatialPatterns	71
dimCellPlot	72
dimCellPlot2D	74
dimGenePlot	77
dimGenePlot2D	78
dimGenePlot3D	81
dimPlot	83

dimPlot2D	84
dimPlot3D	88
doHclust	90
doHMRF	91
doKmeans	93
doLeidenCluster	94
doLeidenSubCluster	95
doLouvainCluster	97
doLouvainCluster_community	98
doLouvainCluster_multinet	99
doLouvainSubCluster	100
doLouvainSubCluster_community	102
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet	104
doRandomWalkCluster	106
doSNNCluster	107
estimateImageBg	108
exportGiottoViewer	108
exprCellCellcom	109
fDataDT	111
filterCellProximityGenes	111
filterCombinations	112
filterCPG	113
filterDistributions	114
filterGiotto	116
findCellProximityGenes	117
findCPG	118
findGiniMarkers	120
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all	122
findMarkers	123
findMarkers_one_vs_all	124
findMastMarkers	126
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all	127
findNetworkNeighbors	128
findScranMarkers	128
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all	129
get10Xmatrix	130
getClusterSimilarity	131
getDendrogramSplits	132
getDistinctColors	133
getGiottoImage	133
getSpatialDataset	134
giotto-class	134
heatmSpatialCorGenes	135
hyperGeometricEnrich	136
insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D	137
insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D	138
jackstrawPlot	139
loadHMRF	141
makeSignMatrixPAGE	142
makeSignMatrixRank	142
mergeClusters	143
normalizeGiotto	144

PAGEEnrich	145
pDataDT	146
plotCCcomDotplot	147
plotCCcomHeatmap	148
plotCellProximityGenes	149
plotCombineCCcom	150
plotCombineCellCellCommunication	152
plotCombineCellProximityGenes	153
plotCombineCPG	154
plotCPG	155
plotGiottoImage	157
plotHeatmap	157
plotICG	159
plotInteractionChangedGenes	160
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap	161
plotMetaDataHeatmap	163
plotPCA	165
plotPCA_2D	166
plotPCA_3D	168
plotRankSpatvsExpr	170
plotRecovery	171
plotRecovery_sub	172
plotStatDelaunayNetwork	172
plotTSNE	173
plotTSNE_2D	175
plotTSNE_3D	177
plotUMAP	179
plotUMAP_2D	181
plotUMAP_3D	183
print.giotto	184
rankEnrich	185
rankSpatialCorGroups	185
readExprMatrix	186
readGiottoInstructions	187
removeCellAnnotation	187
removeGeneAnnotation	188
replaceGiottoInstructions	188
runDWLSDeconv	189
runHyperGeometricEnrich	190
runPAGEEnrich	191
runPCA	192
runRankEnrich	193
runSpatialDeconv	194
runSpatialEnrich	195
runtSNE	196
runUMAP	198
screePlot	200
selectPatternGenes	202
show,giotto-method	203
showClusterDendrogram	203
showClusterHeatmap	204
showGiottoImageNames	205

showGiottoInstructions	206
showGrids	206
showNetworks	207
showPattern	207
showPattern2D	208
showPattern3D	209
showPatternGenes	210
showProcessingSteps	212
showSaveParameters	212
showSpatialCorGenes	213
signPCA	214
silhouetteRank	215
spatCellCellcom	216
spatCellPlot	218
spatCellPlot2D	220
spatDimCellPlot	223
spatDimCellPlot2D	225
spatDimGenePlot	230
spatDimGenePlot2D	232
spatDimGenePlot3D	236
spatDimPlot	239
spatDimPlot2D	241
spatDimPlot3D	246
spatGenePlot	249
spatGenePlot2D	251
spatGenePlot3D	253
spatialAEH	256
spatialDE	257
spatNetwDistributions	258
spatNetwDistributionsDistance	259
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors	260
spatPlot	261
spatPlot2D	263
spatPlot3D	266
specificCellCellcommunicationScores	269
split_dendrogram_in_two	271
stitchFieldCoordinates	271
stitchTileCoordinates	272
subClusterCells	273
subsetGiotto	275
subsetGiottoLocs	275
trendSceek	276
updateGiottoImage	277
viewHMRResults	278
viewHMRResults2D	278
viewHMRResults3D	279
violinPlot	280
writeHMRResults	281
write_giotto_viewer_annotation	282
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction	282
write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation	283

addCellIntMetadata	<i>addCellIntMetadata</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Creates an additional metadata column with information about interacting and non-interacting cell types of the selected cell-cell interaction.

Usage

```
addCellIntMetadata(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network = "spatial_network",  
  cluster_column,  
  cell_interaction,  
  name = "select_int",  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatial_network</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	column of cell types
<code>cell_interaction</code>	cell-cell interaction to use
<code>name</code>	name for the new metadata column
<code>return_gobject</code>	return an updated giotto object

Details

This function will create an additional metadata column which selects interacting cell types for a specific cell-cell interaction. For example, if you want to color interacting astrocytes and oligodendrocytes it will create a new metadata column with the values "select_astrocytes", "select_oligodendrocytes", "other_astrocytes", "other_oligodendrocytes" and "other". Where "other" is all other cell types found within the selected cell type column.

Value

Giotto object

Examples

```
addCellIntMetadata(gobject)
```

addCellMetadata	<i>addCellMetadata</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

adds cell metadata to the giotto object

Usage

```
addCellMetadata(
  gobject,
  new_metadata,
  vector_name = NULL,
  by_column = FALSE,
  column_cell_ID = NULL
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>new_metadata</code>	new cell metadata to use (data.table, data.frame, ...)
<code>vector_name</code>	(optional) custom name if you provide a single vector
<code>by_column</code>	merge metadata based on cell_ID column in pDataDT (default = FALSE)
<code>column_cell_ID</code>	column name of new metadata to use if by_column = TRUE

Details

You can add additional cell metadata in two manners:

- 1. Provide a data.table or data.frame with cell annotations in the same order as the cell_ID column in pDataDT(gobject)
- 2. Provide a data.table or data.frame with cell annotations and specify which column contains the cell IDs, these cell IDs need to match with the cell_ID column in pDataDT(gobject)

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addCellMetadata(gobject)
```

addCellStatistics	<i>addCellStatistics</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

adds cells statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addCellStatistics(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  detection_threshold = 0,  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
detection_threshold	detection threshold to consider a gene detected
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

This function will add the following statistics to cell metadata:

- `nr_genes`: Denotes in how many genes are detected per cell
- `perc_genes`: Denotes what percentage of genes is detected per cell
- `total_expr`: Shows the total sum of gene expression per cell

Value

giotto object if `return_gobject = TRUE`

Examples

```
addCellStatistics(gobject)
```

addGeneMetadata	<i>addGeneMetadata</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

adds gene metadata to the giotto object

Usage

```
addGeneMetadata(gobject, new_metadata, by_column = F, column_gene_ID = NULL)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>new_metadata</code>	new metadata to use
<code>by_column</code>	merge metadata based on gene_ID column in fDataDT
<code>column_gene_ID</code>	column name of new metadata to use if <code>by_column = TRUE</code>

Details

You can add additional gene metadata in two manners: 1. Provide a data.table or data.frame with gene annotations in the same order as the gene_ID column in fDataDT(gobject) 2. Provide a data.table or data.frame with gene annotations and specify which column contains the gene IDs, these gene IDs need to match with the gene_ID column in fDataDT(gobject)

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addGeneMetadata(gobject)
```

addGenesPerc	<i>addGenesPerc</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

calculates the total percentage of (normalized) counts for a subset of selected genes

Usage

```
addGenesPerc(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  vector_name = "gene_perc",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 expression_values expression values to use
 genes vector of selected genes
 vector_name column name as seen in pDataDT()
 return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Value

giotto object if return_gobject = TRUE, else a vector with

Examples

```
addGenesPerc(gobject)
```

addGeneStatistics	<i>addGeneStatistics</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

adds gene statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addGeneStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 expression_values expression values to use
 detection_threshold detection threshold to consider a gene detected
 return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

This function will add the following statistics to gene metadata:

- nr_cells: Denotes in how many cells the gene is detected
- per_cells: Denotes in what percentage of cells the gene is detected
- total_expr: Shows the total sum of gene expression in all cells
- mean_expr: Average gene expression in all cells
- mean_expr_det: Average gene expression in cells with detectable levels of the gene

Value

giotto object if return_gobject = TRUE

Examples

```
addGeneStatistics(gobject)
```

```
addGiottoImage
```

```
addGiottoImage
```

Description

Adds giotto image objects to your giotto object

Usage

```
addGiottoImage(gobject, images)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

images list of giotto image objects, see [createGiottoImage](#)

Value

an updated Giotto object with access to the list of images

Examples

```
addGiottoImage(mg_object)
```

```
addGiottoImageToSpatPlot
```

```
addGiottoImageToSpatPlot
```

Description

Add a giotto image to a spatial ggplot object post creation

Usage

```
addGiottoImageToSpatPlot(spatpl = NULL, gimage = NULL)
```

Arguments

spatpl a spatial ggplot object

gimage a giotto image, see [createGiottoImage](#)

Value

an updated spatial ggplot object

Examples

```
addGiottoImageToSpatPlot(mg_object)
```

addHMRF	<i>addHMRF</i>
---------	----------------

Description

Add selected results from doHMRF to the giotto object

Usage

```
addHMRF(gobject, HMRFOutput, k = NULL, betas_to_add = NULL, hmrf_name = NULL)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFOutput	HMRF output from doHMRF()
k	number of domains
betas_to_add	results from different betas that you want to add
hmrf_name	specify a custom name

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addHMRF(gobject)
```

addNetworkLayout	<i>addNetworkLayout</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Add a network layout for a selected nearest neighbor network

Usage

```
addNetworkLayout(
  gobject,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  layout_type = c("drl"),
  options_list = NULL,
  layout_name = "layout",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	kNN or sNN
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to be used
<code>layout_type</code>	layout algorithm to use
<code>options_list</code>	list of options for selected layout
<code>layout_name</code>	name for layout
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

This function creates layout coordinates based on the provided kNN or sNN. Currently only the force-directed graph layout "drl", see [layout_with_drl](#), is implemented. This provides an alternative to tSNE or UMAP based visualizations.

Value

giotto object with updated layout for selected NN network

Examples

```
addNetworkLayout(gobject)
```

`addStatistics`

addStatistics

Description

adds genes and cells statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>detection_threshold</code>	detection threshold to consider a gene detected
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

See [addGeneStatistics](#) and [addCellStatistics](#)

Value

giotto object if return_gobject = TRUE, else a list with results

Examples

```
addStatistics(gobject)
```

adjustGiottoMatrix	<i>adjustGiottoMatrix</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

normalize and/or scale expression values of Giotto object

Usage

```
adjustGiottoMatrix(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  batch_columns = NULL,
  covariate_columns = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  update_slot = c("custom")
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
batch_columns	metadata columns that represent different batch (max = 2)
covariate_columns	metadata columns that represent covariates to regress out
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
update_slot	expression slot that will be updated (default = custom)

Details

This function implements the [removeBatchEffect](#) function to remove known batch effects and to adjust expression values according to provided covariates.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
adjustGiottoMatrix(gobject)
```

annotateGiotto	<i>annotateGiotto</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

Converts cluster results into provided annotation.

Usage

```
annotateGiotto(  
  gobject,  
  annotation_vector = NULL,  
  cluster_column = NULL,  
  name = "cell_types"  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>annotation_vector</code>	named annotation vector (names = cluster ids)
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to convert to annotation names
<code>name</code>	new name for annotation column

Details

You need to specify which (cluster) column you want to annotate and you need to provide an annotation vector like this:

- 1. identify the cell type of each cluster
- 2. create a vector of these cell types, e.g. `cell_types = c('T-cell', 'B-cell', 'Stromal')`
- 3. provide original cluster names to previous vector, e.g. `names(cell_types) = c(2, 1, 3)`

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
annotateGiotto(gobject)
```

annotateSpatialGrid *annotateSpatialGrid*

Description

annotate spatial grid with cell ID and cell metadata (optional)

Usage

```
annotateSpatialGrid(
  gobject,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  cluster_columns = NULL
)
```

Arguments

gobject Giotto object
 spatial_grid_name name of spatial grid, see [showGrids](#)
 cluster_columns names of cell metadata, see [pDataDT](#)

Value

annotated spatial grid data.table

Examples

```
annotateSpatialGrid()
```

annotateSpatialNetwork
 annotateSpatialNetwork

Description

Annotate spatial network with cell metadata information.

Usage

```
annotateSpatialNetwork(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  cluster_column,
  create_full_network = F
)
```

Arguments

`gobject` giotto object
`spatial_network_name` name of spatial network to use
`cluster_column` name of column to use for clusters
`create_full_network` convert from reduced to full network representation

Value

annotated network in data.table format

Examples

```
annotateSpatialNetwork(gobject)
```

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups
      average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups
```

Description

calculate average expression per cluster

Usage

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2
)
```

Arguments

`gobject` giotto object to use
`cluster_column` cluster column with cell type information
`gene_set_1` first specific gene set from gene pairs
`gene_set_2` second specific gene set from gene pairs

Details

Details will follow soon.

Value

data.table with average expression scores for each cluster

Examples

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups(gobject)
```

binSpect	<i>binSpect</i>
----------	-----------------

Description

Previously: binGetSpatialGenes. BinSpect (Binary Spatial Extraction of genes) is a fast computational method that identifies genes with a spatially coherent expression pattern.

Usage

```
binSpect(
  gobject,
  bin_method = c("kmeans", "rank"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  subset_genes = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  nstart = 3,
  iter_max = 10,
  percentage_rank = 30,
  do_fisher_test = TRUE,
  calc_hub = FALSE,
  hub_min_int = 3,
  get_av_expr = TRUE,
  get_high_expr = TRUE,
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>bin_method</code>	method to binarize gene expression
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>subset_genes</code>	only select a subset of genes to test
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use (default = 'spatial_network')
<code>nstart</code>	kmeans: nstart parameter
<code>iter_max</code>	kmeans: iter.max parameter
<code>percentage_rank</code>	percentage of top cells for binarization
<code>do_fisher_test</code>	perform fisher test
<code>calc_hub</code>	calculate the number of hub cells
<code>hub_min_int</code>	minimum number of cell-cell interactions for a hub cell
<code>get_av_expr</code>	calculate the average expression per gene of the high expressing cells
<code>get_high_expr</code>	calculate the number of high expressing cells per gene

do_parallel	run calculations in parallel with mclapply
cores	number of cores to use if do_parallel = TRUE
verbose	be verbose

Details

We provide two ways to identify spatial genes based on gene expression binarization. Both methods are identical except for how binarization is performed.

- 1. binarize: Each gene is binarized (0 or 1) in each cell with **kmeans** ($k = 2$) or based on **rank** percentile
- 2. network: All cells are connected through a spatial network based on the physical coordinates
- 3. contingency table: A contingency table is calculated based on all edges of neighboring cells and the binarized expression (0-0, 0-1, 1-0 or 1-1)
- 4. For each gene an odds-ratio (OR) and fisher.test (optional) is calculated

Other statistics are provided (optional):

- Number of cells with high expression (binary = 1)
- Average expression of each gene within high expressing cells
- Number of hub cells, these are high expressing cells that have a user defined number of high expressing neighbors

By selecting a subset of likely spatial genes (e.g. soft thresholding highly variable genes) or using multiple cores can accelerate the speed.

Value

data.table with results (see details)

Examples

```
binSpect(gobject)
```

calculateHVG	<i>calculateHVG</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

compute highly variable genes

Usage

```
calculateHVG(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  method = c("cov_groups", "cov_loess"),
  reverse_log_scale = FALSE,
  logbase = 2,
  expression_threshold = 0,
```

```

    nr_expression_groups = 20,
    zscore_threshold = 1.5,
    HVGname = "hvg",
    difference_in_cov = 0.1,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "HVGplot",
    return_gobject = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>method</code>	method to calculate highly variable genes
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse log-scale of expression values (default = FALSE)
<code>logbase</code>	if <code>reverse_log_scale</code> is TRUE, which log base was used?
<code>expression_threshold</code>	expression threshold to consider a gene detected
<code>nr_expression_groups</code>	number of expression groups for <code>cov_groups</code>
<code>zscore_threshold</code>	zscore to select hvg for <code>cov_groups</code>
<code>HVGname</code>	name for highly variable genes in cell metadata
<code>difference_in_cov</code>	minimum difference in coefficient of variance required
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Currently we provide 2 ways to calculate highly variable genes: **1. high coeff of variance (COV) within groups:**

First genes are binned (*nr_expression_groups*) into average expression groups and the COV for each gene is converted into a z-score within each bin. Genes with a z-score higher than the threshold (*zscore_threshold*) are considered highly variable.

2. high COV based on loess regression prediction:

A predicted COV is calculated for each gene using loess regression ($COV \sim \log(\text{mean expression})$). Genes that show a higher than predicted COV (*difference_in_cov*) are considered highly variable.

Value

giotto object highly variable genes appended to gene metadata (fDataDT)

Examples

```
# 1. create giotto object
expr_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_expr.txt", package = 'Giotto')
loc_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_locs.txt", package = 'Giotto')
VC_small <- createGiottoObject(raw_exprs = expr_path, spatial_locs = loc_path)

# 2. normalize giotto
VC_small <- normalizeGiotto(gobject = VC_small, scalefactor = 6000)
VC_small <- addStatistics(gobject = VC_small)

# 3. highly variable genes detection
VC_small <- calculateHVG(gobject = VC_small)
```

calculateMetaTable	<i>calculateMetaTable</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

calculates the average gene expression for one or more (combined) annotation columns.

Usage

```
calculateMetaTable(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL
)
```

Arguments

```
gobject          giotto object
expression_values expression values to use
metadata_cols    annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)
selected_genes   subset of genes to use
```

Value

data.table with average expression values for each gene per (combined) annotation

Examples

```
calculateMetaTable(gobject)
```

```
calculateMetaTableCells
      calculateMetaTableCells
```

Description

calculates the average metadata values for one or more (combined) annotation columns.

Usage

```
calculateMetaTableCells(
  gobject,
  value_cols = NULL,
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL
)
```

Arguments

```
gobject      giotto object
value_cols   metadata or enrichment value columns to use
metadata_cols annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)
spat_enr_names which spatial enrichment results to include
```

Value

data.table with average metadata values per (combined) annotation

Examples

```
calculateMetaTableCells(gobject)
```

```
cellProximityBarplot  cellProximityBarplot
```

Description

Create barplot from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
cellProximityBarplot(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  min_orig_ints = 5,
  min_sim_ints = 5,
  p_val = 0.05,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
```

```

    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "cellProximityBarplot"
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>CPscore</code>	CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code>
<code>min_orig_ints</code>	filter on minimum original cell-cell interactions
<code>min_sim_ints</code>	filter on minimum simulated cell-cell interactions
<code>p_val</code>	p-value
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

This function creates a barplot that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
cellProximityBarplot(CPscore)
```

```
cellProximityEnrichment
```

cellProximityEnrichment

Description

Compute cell-cell interaction enrichment (observed vs expected)

Usage

```

cellProximityEnrichment(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  cluster_column,
  number_of_simulations = 1000,
  adjust_method = c("none", "fdr", "bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel",
    "BY")
)

```


Arguments

gobject giotto object
spatial_network_name
 name of spatial network to use
cluster_column name of column to use for clusters
number_of_simulations
 number of simulations to create expected observations
adjust_method method to adjust p.values

Details

Spatial proximity enrichment or depletion between pairs of cell types is calculated by calculating the observed over the expected frequency of cell-cell proximity interactions. The expected frequency is the average frequency calculated from a number of spatial network simulations. Each individual simulation is obtained by reshuffling the cell type labels of each node (cell) in the spatial network.

Value

List of cell Proximity scores (CPscores) in data.table format. The first data.table (raw_sim_table) shows the raw observations of both the original and simulated networks. The second data.table (enrichm_res) shows the enrichment results.

Examples

```
cellProximityEnrichment(gobject)
```

```
cellProximityHeatmap    cellProximityHeatmap
```

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```

cellProximityHeatmap(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  scale = T,
  order_cell_types = T,
  color_breaks = NULL,
  color_names = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityHeatmap"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>CPscore</code>	CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code>
<code>scale</code>	scale cell-cell proximity interaction scores
<code>order_cell_types</code>	order cell types based on enrichment correlation
<code>color_breaks</code>	numerical vector of length 3 to represent min, mean and maximum
<code>color_names</code>	character color vector of length 3
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

This function creates a heatmap that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

ggplot heatmap

Examples

```
cellProximityHeatmap(CPscore)
```

```
cellProximityNetwork  cellProximityNetwork
```

Description

Create network from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
cellProximityNetwork(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  remove_self_edges = FALSE,
  self_loop_strength = 0.1,
  color_depletion = "lightgreen",
  color_enrichment = "red",
  rescale_edge_weights = TRUE,
  edge_weight_range_depletion = c(0.1, 1),
  edge_weight_range_enrichment = c(1, 5),
  layout = c("Fruchterman", "DrL", "Kamada-Kawai"),
```

```

    only_show_enrichment_edges = F,
    edge_width_range = c(0.1, 2),
    node_size = 4,
    node_text_size = 6,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "cellProximityNetwork"
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>CPscore</code>	CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code>
<code>remove_self_edges</code>	remove enrichment/depletion edges with itself
<code>self_loop_strength</code>	size of self-loops
<code>color_depletion</code>	color for depleted cell-cell interactions
<code>color_enrichment</code>	color for enriched cell-cell interactions
<code>rescale_edge_weights</code>	rescale edge weights (boolean)
<code>edge_weight_range_depletion</code>	numerical vector of length 2 to rescale depleted edge weights
<code>edge_weight_range_enrichment</code>	numerical vector of length 2 to rescale enriched edge weights
<code>layout</code>	layout algorithm to use to draw nodes and edges
<code>only_show_enrichment_edges</code>	show only the enriched pairwise scores
<code>edge_width_range</code>	range of edge width
<code>node_size</code>	size of nodes
<code>node_text_size</code>	size of node labels
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

This function creates a network that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

igraph plot

Examples

```
cellProximityNetwork(CPscore)
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot  cellProximitySpatPlot
```

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed on to cellProximitySpatPlot2D
	<code>interaction_name</code> cell-cell interaction name
	<code>cluster_column</code> cluster column with cell clusters
	<code>sdimx</code> x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
	<code>sdimy</code> y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
	<code>cell_color</code> color for cells (see details)
	<code>cell_color_code</code> named vector with colors
	<code>color_as_factor</code> convert color column to factor
	<code>show_other_cells</code> decide if show cells not in network
	<code>show_network</code> show spatial network of selected cells
	<code>show_other_network</code> show spatial network of not selected cells
	<code>network_color</code> color of spatial network
	<code>spatial_network_name</code> name of spatial network to use
	<code>show_grid</code> show spatial grid
	<code>grid_color</code> color of spatial grid
	<code>spatial_grid_name</code> name of spatial grid to use
	<code>coord_fix_ratio</code> fix ratio between x and y-axis
	<code>show_legend</code> show legend
	<code>point_size_select</code> size of selected points
	<code>point_select_border_col</code> border color of selected points
	<code>point_select_border_stroke</code> stroke size of selected points
	<code>point_size_other</code> size of other points
	<code>point_alpha_other</code> opacity of other points
	<code>point_other_border_col</code> border color of other points
	<code>point_other_border_stroke</code> stroke size of other points
	<code>show_plot</code> show plots

return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters from [all_plots_save_function](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name
 in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[cellProximitySpatPlot2D](#) and [cellProximitySpatPlot3D](#) for 3D

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot(gobject)
```

cellProximitySpatPlot2D

cellProximitySpatPlot2D

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
```

```

point_size_select = 2,
point_select_border_col = "black",
point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
point_size_other = 1,
point_alpha_other = 0.3,
point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "cellProximitySpatPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_other_cells</code>	decide if show cells not in network
<code>show_network</code>	show spatial network of selected cells
<code>show_other_network</code>	show spatial network of not selected cells
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>coord_fix_ratio</code>	fix ratio between x and y-axis
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>point_size_select</code>	size of selected points
<code>point_select_border_col</code>	border color of selected points
<code>point_select_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of selected points

point_size_other	size of other points
point_alpha_other	opacity of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D(gobject)
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D
      cellProximitySpatPlot2D
```

Description

Visualize 3D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = T,
  show_network = T,
  show_other_network = F,
```

```

network_color = NULL,
spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
show_grid = F,
grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
show_legend = T,
point_size_select = 4,
point_size_other = 2,
point_alpha_other = 0.5,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "cellProximitySpatPlot3D",
...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_other_cells</code>	decide if show cells not in network
<code>show_network</code>	show spatial network of selected cells
<code>show_other_network</code>	show spatial network of not selected cells
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend

point_size_select	size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_alpha_other	opacity of other points
axis_scale	scale of axis
custom_ratio	custom ratio of axes
x_ticks	ticks on x-axis
y_ticks	ticks on y-axis
z_ticks	ticks on z-axis
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotly object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional parameters

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D(gobject)
```

cellProximityVisPlot	<i>cellProximityVisPlot</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

Visualize cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
```

```

cell_color_code = NULL,
color_as_factor = T,
show_other_cells = F,
show_network = F,
show_other_network = F,
network_color = NULL,
spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
show_grid = F,
grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
coord_fix_ratio = 1,
show_legend = T,
point_size_select = 2,
point_select_border_col = "black",
point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
point_size_other = 1,
point_alpha_other = 0.3,
point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>interaction_name</code>	cell-cell interaction name
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell clusters
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz')
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>show_other_cells</code>	show not selected cells
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>show_other_network</code>	show underlying spatial network of other cells
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use

show_grid	show spatial grid
grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
point_size_select	size of selected points
point_select_border_col	border color of selected points
point_select_border_stroke	stroke size of selected points
point_size_other	size of other points
point_alpha_other	alpha of other points
point_other_border_col	border color of other points
point_other_border_stroke	stroke size of other points
axis_scale	scale of axis
custom_ratio	custom ratio of scales
x_ticks	x ticks
y_ticks	y ticks
z_ticks	z ticks
plot_method	method to plot
...	additional parameters

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot(gobject)
```

changeGiottoInstructions	<i>changeGiottoInstructions</i>
--------------------------	---------------------------------

Description

Function to change one or more instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
changeGiottoInstructions(
  gobject,
  params = NULL,
  new_values = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
params	parameter(s) to change
new_values	new value(s) for parameter(s)
return_gobject	(boolean) return giotto object

Value

giotto object with one or more changed instructions

Examples

```
changeGiottoInstructions()
```

changeImageBg	<i>changeImageBg</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Function to change the background color of a magick image plot to another color

Usage

```
changeImageBg(
  mg_object,
  bg_color,
  perc_range = 10,
  new_color = "#FFFFFF",
  new_name = NULL
)
```

Arguments

mg_object	magick image or giotto image object
bg_color	estimated current background color
perc_range	range around estimated background color to include (percentage)
new_color	new background color
new_name	change name of Giotto image

Value

magick image or giotto image object with updated background color

Examples

```
changeImageBg(mg_object)
```

clusterCells	<i>clusterCells</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

cluster cells using a variety of different methods

Usage

```
clusterCells(
  gobject,
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet", "randomwalk",
    "sNNclust", "kmeans", "hierarchical"),
  name = "cluster_name",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  pyth_leid_resolution = 1,
  pyth_leid_weight_col = "weight",
  pyth_leid_part_type = c("RBConfigurationVertexPartition",
    "ModularityVertexPartition"),
  pyth_leid_init_memb = NULL,
  pyth_leid_iterations = 1000,
  pyth_louv_resolution = 1,
  pyth_louv_weight_col = NULL,
  python_louv_random = F,
  python_path = NULL,
  louvain_gamma = 1,
  louvain_omega = 1,
  walk_steps = 4,
  walk_clusters = 10,
  walk_weights = NA,
  sNNclust_k = 20,
  sNNclust_eps = 4,
  sNNclust_minPts = 16,
  borderPoints = TRUE,
```

```

expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
genes_to_use = NULL,
dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
dim_reduction_name = "pca",
dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
distance_method = c("original", "pearson", "spearman", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
km_centers = 10,
km_iter_max = 100,
km_nstart = 1000,
km_algorithm = "Hartigan-Wong",
hc_agglomeration_method = c("ward.D2", "ward.D", "single", "complete", "average",
    "mcquitty", "median", "centroid"),
hc_k = 10,
hc_h = NULL,
return_gobject = TRUE,
set_seed = T,
seed_number = 1234
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cluster_method</code>	community cluster method to use
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>pyth_leid_resolution</code>	resolution for leiden
<code>pyth_leid_weight_col</code>	column to use for weights
<code>pyth_leid_part_type</code>	partition type to use
<code>pyth_leid_init_memb</code>	initial membership
<code>pyth_leid_iterations</code>	number of iterations
<code>pyth_louv_resolution</code>	resolution for louvain
<code>pyth_louv_weight_col</code>	python louvain param: weight column
<code>python_louv_random</code>	python louvain param: random
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>louvain_gamma</code>	louvain param: gamma or resolution
<code>louvain_omega</code>	louvain param: omega
<code>walk_steps</code>	randomwalk: number of steps
<code>walk_clusters</code>	randomwalk: number of clusters

walk_weights	randomwalk: weight column
sNNclust_k	SNNclust: k neighbors to use
sNNclust_eps	SNNclust: epsilon
sNNclust_minPts	SNNclust: min points
borderPoints	SNNclust: border points
expression_values	expression values to use
genes_to_use	= NULL,
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	name of reduction 'pca',
dimensions_to_use	dimensions to use
distance_method	distance method
km_centers	kmeans centers
km_iter_max	kmeans iterations
km_nstart	kmeans random starting points
km_algorithm	kmeans algorithm
hc_agglomeration_method	hierarchical clustering method
hc_k	hierachical number of clusters
hc_h	hierarchical tree cutoff
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

Details

Wrapper for the different clustering methods.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[doLeidenCluster](#), [doLouvainCluster_community](#), [doLouvainCluster_multinet](#), [doLouvainCluster](#), [doRandomWalkCluster](#), [doSNNCluster](#), [doKmeans](#), [doHclust](#)

Examples

```
clusterCells(gobject)
```

clusterSpatialCorGenes	<i>clusterSpatialCorGenes</i>
------------------------	-------------------------------

Description

Cluster based on spatially correlated genes

Usage

```
clusterSpatialCorGenes(
  spatCorObject,
  name = "spat_clus",
  hclust_method = "ward.D",
  k = 10,
  return_obj = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

spatCorObject	spatial correlation object
name	name for spatial clustering results
hclust_method	method for hierarchical clustering
k	number of clusters to extract
return_obj	return spatial correlation object (spatCorObject)

Value

spatCorObject or cluster results

Examples

```
clusterSpatialCorGenes(gobject)
```

combCCcom	<i>combCCcom</i>
-----------	------------------

Description

Combine spatial and expression based cell-cell communication data.tables

Usage

```
combCCcom(
  spatialCC,
  exprCC,
  min_lig_nr = 3,
  min_rec_nr = 3,
  min_padj_value = 1,
  min_log2fc = 0,
  min_av_diff = 0,
  detailed = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

spatialCC	spatial cell-cell communication scores
exprCC	expression cell-cell communication scores
min_lig_nr	minimum number of ligand cells
min_rec_nr	minimum number of receptor cells
min_padj_value	minimum adjusted p-value
min_log2fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_av_diff	minimum average expression difference
detailed	detailed option used with spatCellCellCom (default = FALSE)

Value

combined data.table with spatial and expression communication data

Examples

```
combCCcom(gobject)
```

```
combineCellProximityGenes
  combineCellProximityGenes
```

Description

Combine CPG scores in a pairwise manner.

Usage

```
combineCellProximityGenes(
  cpgObject,
  selected_ints = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,
  min_cells = 5,
  min_int_cells = 3,
```

```

    min_fdr = 0.05,
    min_spat_diff = 0,
    min_log2_fc = 0.5,
    do_parallel = TRUE,
    cores = NA,
    verbose = T
  )

```

Arguments

<code>cpgObject</code>	cell proximity gene score object
<code>selected_ints</code>	subset of selected cell-cell interactions (optional)
<code>selected_genes</code>	subset of selected genes (optional)
<code>specific_genes_1</code>	specific geneset combo (need to position match <code>specific_genes_2</code>)
<code>specific_genes_2</code>	specific geneset combo (need to position match <code>specific_genes_1</code>)
<code>min_cells</code>	minimum number of target cell type
<code>min_int_cells</code>	minimum number of interacting cell type
<code>min_fdr</code>	minimum adjusted p-value
<code>min_spat_diff</code>	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
<code>min_log2_fc</code>	minimum absolute log2 fold-change
<code>do_parallel</code>	run calculations in parallel with <code>mclapply</code>
<code>cores</code>	number of cores to use if <code>do_parallel = TRUE</code>
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Value

`cpgObject` that contains the filtered differential gene scores

Examples

```
combineCellProximityGenes(gobject)
```

combineCPG

combineCPG

Description

Combine CPG scores in a pairwise manner.

Usage

```
combineCPG(
  cpgObject,
  selected_ints = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,
  min_cells = 5,
  min_int_cells = 3,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
selected_ints	subset of selected cell-cell interactions (optional)
selected_genes	subset of selected genes (optional)
specific_genes_1	specific geneset combo (need to position match specific_genes_2)
specific_genes_2	specific geneset combo (need to position match specific_genes_1)
min_cells	minimum number of target cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum absolute log2 fold-change
do_parallel	run calculations in parallel with mclapply
cores	number of cores to use if do_parallel = TRUE
verbose	verbose

Value

cpgObject that contains the filtered differential gene scores

Examples

```
combineCPG(gobject)
```

combineMetadata	<i>combineMetadata</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

This function combines the cell metadata with spatial locations and enrichment results from createSpatialEnrich

Usage

```
combineMetadata(gobject, spat_enr_names = NULL)
```

Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include

Value

Extended cell metadata in data.table format.

Examples

```
combineMetadata(gobject)
```

convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol	<i>convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol</i>
----------------------------	-----------------------------------

Description

This function convert ensembl gene IDs from a matrix to official gene symbols

Usage

```
convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol(matrix, species = c("mouse", "human"))
```

Arguments

matrix	an expression matrix with ensembl gene IDs as rownames
species	species to use for gene symbol conversion

Details

This function requires that the biomaRt library is installed

Value

expression matrix with gene symbols as rownames

createCrossSection	<i>createCrossSection</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Create a virtual 2D cross section.

Usage

```
createCrossSection(
    gobject,
    name = "cross_section",
    spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
    thickness_unit = c("cell", "natural"),
    slice_thickness = 2,
    cell_distance_estimate_method = "mean",
    extend_ratio = 0.2,
    method = c("equation", "3 points", "point and norm vector",
        "point and two plane vectors"),
    equation = NULL,
    point1 = NULL,
    point2 = NULL,
    point3 = NULL,
    normVector = NULL,
    planeVector1 = NULL,
    planeVector2 = NULL,
    mesh_grid_n = 20,
    return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of cross section object. (default = cross_sectino)
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network object. (default = Delaunay_network)
<code>thickness_unit</code>	unit of the virtual section thickness. If "cell", average size of the observed cells is used as length unit. If "natural", the unit of cell location coordinates is used.(default = cell)
<code>slice_thickness</code>	thickness of slice. default = 2
<code>cell_distance_estimate_method</code>	method to estimate average distance between neigobring cells. (default = mean)
<code>extend_ratio</code>	deciding the span of the cross section meshgrid, as a ratio of extension compared to the borders of the vitural tissue section. (default = 0.2)
<code>method</code>	method to define the cross section plane. If equation, the plane is defined by a four element numerical vector (equation) in the form of c(A,B,C,D), corresponding to a plane with equation $Ax+By+Cz=D$. If 3 points, the plane is define by the coordinates of 3 points, as given by point1, point2, and point3. If point

	and norm vector, the plane is defined by the coordinates of one point (point1) in the plane and the coordinates of one norm vector (normVector) to the plane. If point and two plane vector, the plane is defined by the coordinates of one point (point1) in the plane and the coordinates of two vectors (planeVector1, planeVector2) in the plane. (default = equation)
equation	equation required by method "equation".equations needs to be a numerical vector of length 4, in the form of c(A,B,C,D), which defines plane $Ax+By+Cz=D$.
point1	coordinates of the first point required by method "3 points", "point and norm vector", and "point and two plane vectors".
point2	coordinates of the second point required by method "3 points"
point3	coordinates of the third point required by method "3 points"
normVector	coordinates of the norm vector required by method "point and norm vector"
planeVector1	coordinates of the first plane vector required by method "point and two plane vectors"
planeVector2	coordinates of the second plane vector required by method "point and two plane vectors"
mesh_grid_n	numer of meshgrid lines to generate along both directions for the cross section plane.
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Creates a virtual 2D cross section object for a given spatial network object. The users need to provide the definition of the cross section plane (see method).

Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

createGiottoImage	<i>createGiottoImage</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Creates a giotto image that can be added to a Giotto object and/or used to add an image to the spatial plotting functions

Usage

```
createGiottoImage(
  gobject = NULL,
  spatial_locs = NULL,
  mg_object,
  name = "image",
  xmax_adj = 0,
  xmin_adj = 0,
  ymax_adj = 0,
  ymin_adj = 0
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatial_locs</code>	spatial locations (alternative if <code>giobject = NULL</code>)
<code>mg_object</code>	magick image object
<code>name</code>	name for the image
<code>xmax_adj</code>	adjustment of the maximum x-value to align the image
<code>xmin_adj</code>	adjustment of the minimum x-value to align the image
<code>ymax_adj</code>	adjustment of the maximum y-value to align the image
<code>ymin_adj</code>	adjustment of the minimum y-value to align the image

Value

a giotto image object

Examples

```
createGiottoImage(mg_object)
```

```
createGiottoInstructions
```

```
createGiottoInstructions
```

Description

Function to set global instructions for giotto functions

Usage

```
createGiottoInstructions(
  python_path = NULL,
  show_plot = NULL,
  return_plot = NULL,
  save_plot = NULL,
  save_dir = NULL,
  plot_format = NULL,
  dpi = NULL,
  units = NULL,
  height = NULL,
  width = NULL
)
```

Arguments

<code>python_path</code>	path to python binary to use
<code>show_plot</code>	print plot to console, default = TRUE
<code>return_plot</code>	return plot as object, default = TRUE
<code>save_plot</code>	automatically save plot, default = FALSE
<code>save_dir</code>	path to directory where to save plots

plot_format	format of plots (defaults to png)
dpi	resolution for raster images
units	units of format (defaults to in)
height	height of plots
width	width of plots

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

See Also

More online information can be found here https://rubd.github.io/Giotto_site/articles/instructions_and_plotting.html

Examples

```
createGiottoInstructions()
```

createGiottoObject	<i>create Giotto object</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------

Description

Function to create a giotto object

Usage

```
createGiottoObject(
  raw_exprs,
  spatial_locs = NULL,
  norm_expr = NULL,
  norm_scaled_expr = NULL,
  custom_expr = NULL,
  cell_metadata = NULL,
  gene_metadata = NULL,
  spatial_network = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = NULL,
  spatial_grid = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = NULL,
  spatial_enrichment = NULL,
  spatial_enrichment_name = NULL,
  dimension_reduction = NULL,
  nn_network = NULL,
  images = NULL,
  offset_file = NULL,
  instructions = NULL,
  cores = NA
)
```


Arguments

raw_exprs	matrix with raw expression counts [required]
spatial_locs	data.table or data.frame with coordinates for cell centroids
norm_expr	normalized expression values
norm_scaled_expr	scaled expression values
custom_expr	custom expression values
cell_metadata	cell annotation metadata
gene_metadata	gene annotation metadata
spatial_network	list of spatial network(s)
spatial_network_name	list of spatial network name(s)
spatial_grid	list of spatial grid(s)
spatial_grid_name	list of spatial grid name(s)
spatial_enrichment	list of spatial enrichment score(s) for each spatial region
spatial_enrichment_name	list of spatial enrichment name(s)
dimension_reduction	list of dimension reduction(s)
nn_network	list of nearest neighbor network(s)
images	list of images
offset_file	file used to stitch fields together (optional)
instructions	list of instructions or output result from createGiottoInstructions
cores	how many cores or threads to use to read data if paths are provided

Details

[Requirements] To create a giotto object you need to provide at least a matrix with genes as row names and cells as column names. This matrix can be provided as a base matrix, sparse Matrix, data.frame, data.table or as a path to any of those. To include spatial information about cells (or regions) you need to provide a matrix, data.table or data.frame (or path to them) with coordinates for all spatial dimensions. This can be 2D (x and y) or 3D (x, y, x). The row order for the cell coordinates should be the same as the column order for the provided expression data.

[Instructions] Additionally an instruction file, generated manually or with [createGiottoInstructions](#) can be provided to instructions, if not a default instruction file will be created for the Giotto object.

[Multiple fields] In case a dataset consists of multiple fields, like seqFISH+ for example, an offset file can be provided to stitch the different fields together. [stitchFieldCoordinates](#) can be used to generate such an offset file.

[Processed data] Processed count data, such as normalized data, can be provided using one of the different expression slots (norm_expr, norm_scaled_expr, custom_expr).

[Metadata] Cell and gene metadata can be provided using the cell and gene metadata slots. This data can also be added afterwards using the [addGeneMetadata](#) or [addCellMetadata](#) functions.

[Other information] Additional information can be provided through the appropriate slots:

- spatial networks
- spatial girds
- spatial enrichments
- dimensions reductions
- nearest neighbours networks
- images

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
createGiottoObject(raw_exprs, spatial_locs)
```

```
createGiottoVisiumObject
```

```
createGiottoVisiumObject
```

Description

creates Giotto object directly from a 10X visium folder

Usage

```
createGiottoVisiumObject(
  visium_dir = NULL,
  expr_data = c("raw", "filter"),
  gene_column_index = 1,
  png_name = NULL,
  xmax_adj = 0,
  xmin_adj = 0,
  ymax_adj = 0,
  ymin_adj = 0,
  instructions = NULL,
  cores = NA
)
```

Arguments

visium_dir	path to the 10X visium directory [required]
expr_data	raw or filtered data (see details)
gene_column_index	which column index to select (see details)
png_name	select name of png to use (see details)
xmax_adj	adjustment of the maximum x-value to align the image
xmin_adj	adjustment of the minimum x-value to align the image
ymax_adj	adjustment of the maximum y-value to align the image
ymin_adj	adjustment of the minimum y-value to align the image
instructions	list of instructions or output result from createGiottoInstructions
cores	how many cores or threads to use to read data if paths are provided

Details

- `expr_data`: raw will take expression data from `raw_feature_bc_matrix` and filter from `filtered_feature_bc_matrix`
- `gene_column_index`: which gene identifiers (names) to use if there are multiple columns (e.g. ensemble and gene symbol)
- `png_name`: by default the first png will be selected, provide the png name to override this (e.g. `myimage.png`)

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
createGiottoVisiumObject(visium_dir)
```

<code>createHeatmap_DT</code>	<i>createHeatmap_DT</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
createHeatmap_DT(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  cluster_cor_method = "pearson",
  cluster_hclust_method = "ward.D",
  gene_order = c("correlation", "custom"),
  gene_custom_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_hclust_method = "complete"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cluster_order</code>	method to determine cluster order
<code>cluster_custom_order</code>	custom order for clusters

```

cluster_cor_method      method for cluster correlation
cluster_hclust_method   method for hierarchical clustering of clusters

gene_order              method to determine gene order
gene_custom_order       custom order for genes

gene_cor_method         method for gene correlation
gene_hclust_method      method for hierarchical clustering of genes

```

Details

Creates input data.tables for plotHeatmap function.

Value

list

Examples

```
createHeatmap_DT(gobject)
```

createMetagenes	<i>createMetagenes</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

This function creates an average metagene for gene clusters.

Usage

```

createMetagenes(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  gene_clusters,
  name = "metagene",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

```

gobject      Giotto object
expression_values  expression values to use

gene_clusters numerical vector with genes as names
name          name of the metagene results
return_gobject return giotto object

```

Details

An example for the 'gene_clusters' could be like this: `cluster_vector = c(1, 1, 2, 2); names(cluster_vector) = c('geneA', 'geneB', 'geneC', 'geneD')`

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
createMetagenes(gobject)
```

```
createNearestNetwork    createNearestNetwork
```

Description

create a nearest neighbour (NN) network

Usage

```
createNearestNetwork(
  gobject,
  type = c("sNN", "kNN"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  k = 30,
  minimum_shared = 5,
  top_shared = 3,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>type</code>	sNN or kNN
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction method to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>genes_to_use</code>	if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use

name	arbitrary name for NN network
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
k	number of k neighbors to use
minimum_shared	minimum shared neighbors
top_shared	keep at ...
verbose	be verbose
...	additional parameters for kNN and sNN functions from dbscan

Details

This function creates a k-nearest neighbour (kNN) or shared nearest neighbour (sNN) network based on the provided dimension reduction space. To run it directly on the gene expression matrix set *dim_reduction_to_use = NULL*.

See also [kNN](#) and [sNN](#) for more information about how the networks are created.

Output for kNN:

- from: cell_ID for source cell
- to: cell_ID for target cell
- distance: distance between cells
- weight: $\text{weight} = 1/(1 + \text{distance})$

Output for sNN:

- from: cell_ID for source cell
- to: cell_ID for target cell
- distance: distance between cells
- weight: $1/(1 + \text{distance})$
- shared: number of shared neighbours
- rank: ranking of pairwise cell neighbours

For sNN networks two additional parameters can be set:

- minimum_shared: minimum number of shared neighbours needed
- top_shared: keep this number of the top shared neighbours, irrespective of minimum_shared setting

Value

giotto object with updated NN network

Examples

```
createNearestNetwork(gobject)
```

```
createSpatialDefaultGrid  
    createSpatialDefaultGrid
```

Description

Create a spatial grid using the default method

Usage

```
createSpatialDefaultGrid(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,  
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,  
  sdimz_stepsize = NULL,  
  minimum_padding = 1,  
  name = NULL,  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the x-axis
<code>sdimy_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the y-axis
<code>sdimz_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the z-axis
<code>minimum_padding</code>	minimum padding on the edges
<code>name</code>	name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid')
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

Value

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

```
createSpatialDelaunayNetwork
      createSpatialDelaunayNetwork
```

Description

Create a spatial Delaunay network based on cell centroid physical distances.

Usage

```
createSpatialDelaunayNetwork(
  gobject,
  method = c("deldir", "delaunayn_geometry", "RTriangle"),
  dimensions = "all",
  name = "Delaunay_network",
  maximum_distance = "auto",
  minimum_k = 0,
  options = "Pp",
  Y = TRUE,
  j = TRUE,
  S = 0,
  verbose = T,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
method	package to use to create a Delaunay network
dimensions	which spatial dimensions to use (default = all)
name	name for spatial network (default = 'delaunay_network')
maximum_distance	distance cutoff for Delaunay neighbors to consider. If "auto", "upper whisker" value of the distance vector between neighbors is used; see the boxplotgraphics documentation for more details.(default = "auto")
minimum_k	minimum number of neighbours if maximum_distance != NULL
options	(geometry) String containing extra control options for the underlying Qhull command; see the Qhull documentation (../doc/qhull/html/qdelaun.html) for the available options. (default = 'Pp', do not report precision problems)
Y	(RTriangle) If TRUE prohibits the insertion of Steiner points on the mesh boundary.
j	(RTriangle) If TRUE jettisons vertices that are not part of the final triangulation from the output.
S	(RTriangle) Specifies the maximum number of added Steiner points.
verbose	verbose
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
...	Other additional parameters

Details

Creates a spatial Delaunay network as explained in [delaunayn](#) (default), [deldir](#), or [triangulate](#).

Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

Examples

```
createSpatialDelaunayNetwork(gobject)
```

```
createSpatialEnrich     createSpatialEnrich
```

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using an enrichment test.

Usage

```
createSpatialEnrich(...)
```

Arguments

```
...                    Arguments passed on to runSpatialEnrich
gobject                Giotto object
enrich_method          method for gene signature enrichment calculation
sign_matrix            Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
expression_values      expression values to use
reverse_log_scale      reverse expression values from log scale
logbase                log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE
p_value                calculate p-value (default = FALSE)
n_times                (page/rank) number of permutation iterations to calculate p-value
top_percentage         (hyper) percentage of cells that will be considered to have
                         gene expression with matrix binarization
output_enrichment      how to return enrichment output
name                   to give to spatial enrichment results, default = PAGE
return_gobject         return giotto object
```

See Also

[runSpatialEnrich](#)

createSpatialGrid	<i>createSpatialGrid</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Create a spatial grid using the default method

Usage

```
createSpatialGrid(
  gobject,
  name = NULL,
  method = c("default"),
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimz_stepsize = NULL,
  minimum_padding = 1,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for spatial grid
<code>method</code>	method to create a spatial grid
<code>sdimx_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the x-axis
<code>sdimy_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the y-axis
<code>sdimz_stepsize</code>	stepsize along the z-axis
<code>minimum_padding</code>	minimum padding on the edges
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

- default method: [createSpatialDefaultGrid](#)

Value

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

```
createSpatialKNNnetwork
      createSpatialKNNnetwork
```

Description

Create a spatial knn network.

Usage

```
createSpatialKNNnetwork(
  gobject,
  method = "dbscan",
  dimensions = "all",
  name = "knn_network",
  k = 4,
  maximum_distance = NULL,
  minimum_k = 0,
  verbose = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>method</code>	method to create kNN network
<code>dimensions</code>	which spatial dimensions to use (default = all)
<code>name</code>	name for spatial network (default = 'spatial_network')
<code>k</code>	number of nearest neighbors based on physical distance
<code>maximum_distance</code>	distance cutoff for nearest neighbors to consider for kNN network
<code>minimum_k</code>	minimum nearest neighbours if <code>maximum_distance</code> != NULL
<code>verbose</code>	verbose
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>...</code>	additional arguments to the selected method function

Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

dimensions: default = 'all' which takes all possible dimensions. Alternatively you can provide a character vector that specifies the spatial dimensions to use, e.g. `c("sdimx", "sdimy")` or a numerical vector, e.g. `2:3`

maximum_distance: to create a network based on maximum distance only, you also need to set `k` to a very high value, e.g. `k = 100`

Examples

```
createSpatialKNNnetwork(gobject)
```

```
createSpatialNetwork  createSpatialNetwork
```

Description

Create a spatial network based on cell centroid physical distances.

Usage

```
createSpatialNetwork(
  gobject,
  name = NULL,
  dimensions = "all",
  method = c("Delaunay", "kNN"),
  delaunay_method = c("deldir", "delaunayn_geometry", "RTriangle"),
  maximum_distance_delaunay = "auto",
  options = "Pp",
  Y = TRUE,
  j = TRUE,
  S = 0,
  minimum_k = 0,
  knn_method = "dbscan",
  k = 4,
  maximum_distance_knn = NULL,
  verbose = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for spatial network (default = 'spatial_network')
<code>dimensions</code>	which spatial dimensions to use (default = all)
<code>method</code>	which method to use to create a spatial network. (default = Delaunay)
<code>delaunay_method</code>	Delaunay method to use
<code>maximum_distance_delaunay</code>	distance cutoff for nearest neighbors to consider for Delaunay network
<code>options</code>	(geometry) String containing extra control options for the underlying Qhull command; see the Qhull documentation (../doc/qhull/html/qdelaun.html) for the available options. (default = 'Pp', do not report precision problems)
<code>Y</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE prohibits the insertion of Steiner points on the mesh boundary.
<code>j</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE jettisons vertices that are not part of the final triangulation from the output.
<code>S</code>	(RTriangle) Specifies the maximum number of added Steiner points.
<code>minimum_k</code>	minimum nearest neighbours if maximum_distance != NULL

knn_method	method to create kNN network
k	number of nearest neighbors based on physical distance
maximum_distance_knn	distance cutoff for nearest neighbors to consider for kNN network
verbose	verbose
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
...	Additional parameters for the selected function

Details

Creates a spatial network connecting single-cells based on their physical distance to each other. For Delaunay method, neighbors will be decided by delaunay triangulation and a maximum distance criteria. For kNN method, number of neighbors can be determined by k, or maximum distance from each cell with or without setting a minimum k for each cell.

dimensions: default = 'all' which takes all possible dimensions. Alternatively you can provide a character vector that specifies the spatial dimensions to use, e.g. c("sdmx", "sdimy") or a numerical vector, e.g. 2:3

Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

Examples

```
createSpatialNetwork(gobject)
```

```
create_average_detection_DT
      create_average_detection_DT
```

Description

calculates average gene detection for a cell metadata factor (e.g. cluster)

Usage

```
create_average_detection_DT(
  gobject,
  meta_data_name,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
meta_data_name	name of metadata column to use
expression_values	which expression values to use
detection_threshold	detection threshold to consider a gene detected

Value

data.table with average gene expression values for each factor

create_average_DT	<i>create_average_DT</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

calculates average gene expression for a cell metadata factor (e.g. cluster)

Usage

```
create_average_DT(
  gobject,
  meta_data_name,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom")
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
meta_data_name	name of metadata column to use
expression_values	which expression values to use

Value

data.table with average gene expression values for each factor

create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs	<i>create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs</i>
----------------------------------	---

Description

creates randomized cell ids within a selection of cell types

Usage

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  needed_cell_types
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object to use
 cluster_column cluster column with cell type information
 needed_cell_types vector of cell type names for which a random id will be found

Details

Details will follow.

Value

list of randomly sampled cell ids with same cell type composition

Examples

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs(gobject)
```

```
create_crossSection_object
      create_crossSection_object
```

Description

create a crossSection object

Usage

```

create_crossSection_object(
  name = NULL,
  method = NULL,
  thickness_unit = NULL,
  slice_thickness = NULL,
  cell_distance_estimate_method = NULL,
  extend_ratio = NULL,
  plane_equation = NULL,
  mesh_grid_n = NULL,
  mesh_obj = NULL,
  cell_subset = NULL,
  cell_subset_spatial_locations = NULL,
  cell_subset_projection_locations = NULL,
  cell_subset_projection_PCA = NULL,
  cell_subset_projection_coords = NULL
)
```

Arguments

name	name of cress section object. (default = cross_sectino)
method	method to define the cross section plane.
thickness_unit	unit of the virtual section thickness. If "cell", average size of the observed cells is used as length unit. If "natural", the unit of cell location coordinates is used.(default = cell)
slice_thickness	thickness of slice
cell_distance_estimate_method	method to estimate average distance between neighobring cells. (default = mean)
extend_ratio	deciding the span of the cross section meshgrid, as a ratio of extension compared to the borders of the vitural tissue section. (default = 0.2)
plane_equation	a numerical vector of length 4, in the form of c(A,B,C,D), which defines plane $Ax+By+Cz=D$.
mesh_grid_n	numner of meshgrid lines to generate along both directions for the cross section plane.
mesh_obj	object that stores the cross section meshgrid information.
cell_subset	cells selected by the cross section
cell_subset_spatial_locations	locations of cells selected by the cross section
cell_subset_projection_locations	3D projection coordinates of selected cells onto the cross section plane
cell_subset_projection_PCA	pca of projection coordinates
cell_subset_projection_coords	2D PCA coordinates of selected cells in the cross section plane

create_screepplot	<i>create_screepplot</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

create screepplot with ggplot

Usage

```
create_screepplot(pca_obj, ncp = 20, ylim = c(0, 20))
```

Arguments

pca_obj	pca dimension reduction object
ncp	number of principal components to calculate
ylim	y-axis limits on scree plot

Value

ggplot

crossSectionGenePlot *crossSectionGenePlot*

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
crossSectionGenePlot(
  gobject = NULL,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  default_save_name = "crossSectionGenePlot",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>crossSection_obj</code>	crossSection object
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	parameters for <code>spatGenePlot2D</code>

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#) and [spatGenePlot2D](#)

crossSectionGenePlot3D

crossSectionGenePlot3D

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
crossSectionGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  other_cell_color = alpha("lightgrey", 0),
  default_save_name = "crossSectionGenePlot3D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>crossSection_obj</code>	cross section object as alternative input. default = NULL.
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of cells outside the cross section. default = transparent.
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	parameters for <code>spatGenePlot3D</code>

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
crossSectionGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

crossSectionPlot	<i>crossSectionPlot</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Visualize cells in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
crossSectionPlot(  
  gobject,  
  crossSection_obj = NULL,  
  name = NULL,  
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",  
  default_save_name = "crossSectionPlot",  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>crossSection_obj</code>	cross section object as alternative input. default = NULL.
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	parameters for <code>spatPlot2D</code>

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[crossSectionPlot](#)

crossSectionPlot3D	<i>crossSectionPlot3D</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Visualize cells in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
crossSectionPlot3D(
  gobject,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = alpha("lightgrey", 0),
  default_save_name = "crossSection3D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>crossSection_obj</code>	cross section object as alternative input. default = NULL.
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of cells outside the cross section. default = transparent.
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
<code>...</code>	parameters for spatPlot3D

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
crossSectionPlot3D(gobject)
```

decide_cluster_order *decide_cluster_order*

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
decide_cluster_order(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  cor_method = "pearson",
  hclust_method = "ward.D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cluster_order</code>	method to determine cluster order
<code>cluster_custom_order</code>	custom order for clusters
<code>cor_method</code>	method for correlation
<code>hclust_method</code>	method for hierarchical clustering

Details

Calculates order for clusters.

Value

custom

Examples

```
decide_cluster_order(gobject)
```

detectSpatialCorGenes *detectSpatialCorGenes*

Description

Detect genes that are spatially correlated

Usage

```
detectSpatialCorGenes(
  gobject,
  method = c("grid", "network"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  subset_genes = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  network_smoothing = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  min_cells_per_grid = 4,
  cor_method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman")
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
method	method to use for spatial averaging
expression_values	gene expression values to use
subset_genes	subset of genes to use
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_smoothing	smoothing factor between 0 and 1 (default: automatic)
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
min_cells_per_grid	minimum number of cells to consider a grid
cor_method	correlation method

Details

For method = network, it expects a fully connected spatial network. You can make sure to create a fully connected network by setting minimal_k > 0 in the [createSpatialNetwork](#) function.

- 1. grid-averaging: average gene expression values within a predefined spatial grid
- 2. network-averaging: smoothens the gene expression matrix by averaging the expression within one cell by using the neighbours within the predefined spatial network. b is a smoothening factor that defaults to $1 - 1/k$, where k is the median number of k-neighbors in the selected spatial network. Setting b = 0 means no smoothing and b = 1 means no contribution from its own expression.

The spatCorObject can be further explored with showSpatialCorGenes()

Value

returns a spatial correlation object: "spatCorObject"

See Also

[showSpatialCorGenes](#)

Examples

```
detectSpatialCorGenes(gobject)
```

detectSpatialPatterns *detectSpatialPatterns*

Description

Identify spatial patterns through PCA on average expression in a spatial grid.

Usage

```
detectSpatialPatterns(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  min_cells_per_grid = 4,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 100,
  show_plot = T,
  PC_zscore = 1.5
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use (default = 'spatial_grid')
<code>min_cells_per_grid</code>	minimum number of cells in a grid to be considered
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>PC_zscore</code>	minimum z-score of variance explained by a PC

Details

Steps to identify spatial patterns:

- 1. average gene expression for cells within a grid, see `createSpatialGrid`
- 2. perform PCA on the average grid expression profiles
- 3. convert variance of principal components (PCs) to z-scores and select PCs based on a z-score threshold

Value

spatial pattern object 'spatPatObj'

Examples

```
detectSpatialPatterns(gobject)
```

<code>dimCellPlot</code>	<i>dimCellPlot</i>
--------------------------	--------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimCellPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed on to dimCellPlot2D
	<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> dimension reduction to use
	<code>dim_reduction_name</code> dimension reduction name
	<code>dim1_to_use</code> dimension to use on x-axis
	<code>dim2_to_use</code> dimension to use on y-axis
	<code>spat_enr_names</code> names of spatial enrichment results to include
	<code>cell_annotation_values</code> numeric cell annotation columns
	<code>show_NN_network</code> show underlying NN network
	<code>nn_network_to_use</code> type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
	<code>network_name</code> name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
	<code>cell_color_code</code> named vector with colors for cell annotation values
	<code>cell_color_gradient</code> vector with 3 colors for numeric data
	<code>gradient_midpoint</code> midpoint for color gradient
	<code>gradient_limits</code> vector with lower and upper limits
	<code>select_cell_groups</code> select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
	<code>select_cells</code> select subset of cells based on cell IDs
	<code>show_other_cells</code> display not selected cells

other_cell_color color of not selected cells
 other_point_size size of not selected cells
 show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
 show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
 center_point_size size of center points
 center_point_border_col border color of center points
 center_point_border_stroke border stroke size of center points
 label_size size of labels
 label_fontface font of labels
 edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
 point_shape point with border or not (border or no_border)
 point_size size of point (cell)
 point_alpha transparency of dim. reduction points
 point_border_col color of border around points
 point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 background_color color of plot background
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name
 in save_param

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimCellPlot2D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other dimension reduction cell annotation visualizations: [dimCellPlot2D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimCellPlot(gobject)
```

dimCellPlot2D

dimCellPlot2D

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimCellPlot2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
  point_size = 1,
  point_alpha = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  legend_text = 8,
  legend_symbol_size = 1,
  background_color = "white",
  axis_text = 8,
  axis_title = 8,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
```

```

    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "dimCellPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors for cell annotation values
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points

center_point_border_col	border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke	border stroke size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_shape	point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_alpha	transparency of dim. reduction points
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
background_color	color of plot background
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other dimension reduction cell annotation visualizations: [dimCellPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

dimGenePlot

*dimGenePlot***Description**

Visualize gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot(...)
```

Arguments

```
...           Arguments passed on to dimGenePlot2D
gobject      giotto object
expression_values  gene expression values to use
genes        genes to show
dim_reduction_to_use  dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name  dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use  dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use  dimension to use on y-axis
show_NN_network  show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use  type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name  name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
network_color  color of NN network
edge_alpha  column to use for alpha of the edges
scale_alpha_with_expression  scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
point_shape  point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size  size of point (cell)
point_alpha  transparency of points
cell_color_gradient  vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint  midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits  vector with lower and upper limits
point_border_col  color of border around points
point_border_stroke  stroke size of border around points
show_legend  show legend
legend_text  size of legend text
background_color  color of plot background
axis_text  size of axis text
axis_title  size of axis title
cow_n_col  cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h  cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w  cowplot param: relative width
cow_align  cowplot param: how to align
show_plot  show plots
return_plot  return ggplot object
```

`save_plot` directly save the plot [boolean]
`save_param` list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
`default_save_name` default save name for saving, don't change, change `save_name` in `save_param`

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[dimGenePlot3D](#)

Other dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [dimGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [dimGenePlot3D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimGenePlot(gobject)
```

dimGenePlot2D

dimGenePlot2D

Description

Visualize gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot2D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
  point_size = 1,
  point_alpha = 1,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
```

```

    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    legend_text = 8,
    background_color = "white",
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "dimGenePlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>network_color</code>	color of NN network
<code>edge_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_shape</code>	point with border or not (border or no_border)
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_alpha</code>	transparency of points
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits

point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
background_color	color of plot background
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[dimGenePlot3D](#)

Other dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [dimGenePlot3D\(\)](#), [dimGenePlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

dimGenePlot3D	<i>dimGenePlot3D</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 2,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dimGenePlot3D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name

dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
network_color	color of NN network
cluster_column	cluster column to select groups
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
genes_high_color	color for high expression levels
genes_mid_color	color for medium expression levels
genes_low_color	color for low expression levels
show_legend	show legend
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [dimGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [dimGenePlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

dimPlot

*dimPlot***Description**

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimPlot(...)
```

Arguments

```
... Arguments passed on to dimPlot2D
gobject giotto object
group_by create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
group_by_subset subset the group_by factor column
dim_reduction_to_use dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor convert color column to factor
cell_color_code named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells display not selected cells
other_cell_color color of not selected cells
other_point_size size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size size of center points
center_point_border_col border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke border stroke size of center points
label_size size of labels
label_fontface font of labels
edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
point_shape point with border or not (border or no_border)
```

point_size size of point (cell)
 point_alpha transparency of point
 point_border_col color of border around points
 point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
 title title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 background_color color of plot background
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimPlot(gobject)
```

dimPlot2D

dimPlot2D

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimPlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  group_by = NULL,  
  group_by_subset = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  color_as_factor = T,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),  
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,  
  gradient_limits = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 0.5,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = T,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  center_point_border_col = "black",  
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  label_size = 4,  
  label_fontface = "bold",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),  
  point_size = 1,  
  point_alpha = 1,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  title = NULL,  
  show_legend = T,  
  legend_text = 8,  
  legend_symbol_size = 1,  
  background_color = "white",  
  axis_text = 8,  
  axis_title = 8,  
  cow_n_col = 2,  
  cow_rel_h = 1,  
  cow_rel_w = 1,  
  cow_align = "h",  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),
```

```
    default_save_name = "dimPlot2D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>group_by</code>	create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
<code>group_by_subset</code>	subset the <code>group_by</code> factor column
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points

center_point_border_col	border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke	border stroke size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_shape	point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_alpha	transparency of point
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
title	title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
background_color	color of plot background
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimPlot2D(gobject)
```

dimPlot3D

dimPlot3D

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimPlot3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 4,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dim3D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis

dim3_to_use	dimension to use on z-axis
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
label_size	size of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
dimPlot3D(gobject)
```

doHclust	<i>doHclust</i>
----------	-----------------

Description

cluster cells using hierarchical clustering algorithm

Usage

```
doHclust(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  distance_method = c("pearson", "spearman", "original", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
  agglomeration_method = c("ward.D2", "ward.D", "single", "complete", "average",
    "mcquitty", "median", "centroid"),
  k = 10,
  h = NULL,
  name = "hclust",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes_to_use	subset of genes to use
dim_reduction_to_use	dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name	dimensions reduction name
dimensions_to_use	dimensions to use
distance_method	distance method
agglomeration_method	agglomeration method for hclust
k	number of final clusters

h	cut hierarchical tree at height = h
name	name for hierarchical clustering
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

Details

Description on how to use Kmeans clustering method.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[hclust](#)

Examples

```
doHclust(gobject)
```

doHMRF

doHMRF

Description

Run HMRF

Usage

```
doHMRF(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  spatial_genes = NULL,
  spatial_dimensions = c("sdimx", "sdimy", "sdimz"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  name = "test",
  k = 10,
  betas = c(0, 2, 50),
  tolerance = 1e-10,
  zscore = c("none", "rowcol", "colrow"),
  numinit = 100,
  python_path = NULL,
  output_folder = NULL,
  overwrite_output = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use for HMRF
<code>spatial_genes</code>	spatial genes to use for HMRF
<code>spatial_dimensions</code>	select spatial dimensions to use, default is all possible dimensions
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	use another dimension reduction set as input
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>name</code>	name of HMRF run
<code>k</code>	number of HMRF domains
<code>betas</code>	betas to test for
<code>tolerance</code>	tolerance
<code>zscore</code>	zscore
<code>numinit</code>	number of initializations
<code>python_path</code>	python path to use
<code>output_folder</code>	output folder to save results
<code>overwrite_output</code>	overwrite output folder

Details

Description of HMRF parameters ...

Value

Creates a directory with results that can be viewed with `viewHMRResults`

Examples

```
doHMRF(gobject)
```

doKmeans

*doKmeans***Description**

cluster cells using kmeans algorithm

Usage

```
doKmeans(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  distance_method = c("original", "pearson", "spearman", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
  centers = 10,
  iter_max = 100,
  nstart = 1000,
  algorithm = "Hartigan-Wong",
  name = "kmeans",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes_to_use</code>	subset of genes to use
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimensions reduction name
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	dimensions to use
<code>distance_method</code>	distance method
<code>centers</code>	number of final clusters
<code>iter_max</code>	kmeans maximum iterations
<code>nstart</code>	kmeans nstart
<code>algorithm</code>	kmeans algorithm
<code>name</code>	name for kmeans clustering
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>set_seed</code>	set seed
<code>seed_number</code>	number for seed

Details

Description on how to use Kmeans clustering method.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[kmeans](#)

Examples

```
doKmeans(gobject)
```

doLeidenCluster	<i>doLeidenCluster</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Leiden community detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLeidenCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "leiden_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = "weight",
  partition_type = c("RBConfigurationVertexPartition", "ModularityVertexPartition"),
  init_membership = NULL,
  n_iterations = 1000,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
resolution	resolution
weight_col	weight column to use for edges

partition_type	The type of partition to use for optimisation.
init_membership	initial membership of cells for the partition
n_iterations	number of iterations to run the Leiden algorithm. If the number of iterations is negative, the Leiden algorithm is run until an iteration in which there was no improvement.
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

Details

This function is a wrapper for the Leiden algorithm implemented in python, which can detect communities in graphs of millions of nodes (cells), as long as they can fit in memory. See the <https://github.com/vtraag/leidenalg> github page or the <https://leidenalg.readthedocs.io/en/stable/index.html> readthedocs page for more information.

Partition types available and information:

- **RBCConfigurationVertexPartition**: Implements Reichardt and Bornholdt's Potts model with a configuration null model. This quality function is well-defined only for positive edge weights. This quality function uses a linear resolution parameter.
- **ModularityVertexPartition**: Implements modularity. This quality function is well-defined only for positive edge weights. It does *not* use the resolution parameter

Set *weight_col* = *NULL* to give equal weight (=1) to each edge.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

Examples

```
doLeidenCluster(gobject)
```

doLeidenSubCluster	<i>doLeidenSubCluster</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Further subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Leiden algorithm

Usage

```
doLeidenSubCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_pleiden_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_cov = 1, expression_values =
    "normalized"),
```

```

    hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
    hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
    use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
    min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
    pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
    nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
    k_neighbors = 10,
    resolution = 0.5,
    n_iterations = 500,
    python_path = NULL,
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
    network_name = "sNN.pca",
    return_gobject = TRUE,
    verbose = T
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution of Leiden clustering
<code>n_iterations</code>	number of iterations to run the Leiden algorithm.
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Details

This function performs subclustering using the Leiden algorithm on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object

- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do Leiden clustering

Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[doLeidenCluster](#)

Examples

```
doLeidenSubCluster(gobject)
```

doLouvainCluster	<i>doLouvainCluster</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm.

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster(
  gobject,
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  name = "louvain_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = NULL,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  louv_random = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
version	implemented version of Louvain clustering to use
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)

network_name	name of NN network to use
python_path	[community] specify specific path to python if required
resolution	[community] resolution
weight_col	weight column name
gamma	[multinet] Resolution parameter for modularity in the generalized louvain method.
omega	[multinet] Inter-layer weight parameter in the generalized louvain method
louv_random	[community] Will randomize the node evaluation order and the community evaluation order to get different partitions at each call
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed
...	additional parameters

Details

Louvain clustering using the community or multinet implementation of the louvain clustering algorithm.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[doLouvainCluster_community](#) and [doLouvainCluster_multinet](#)

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainCluster_community
doLouvainCluster_community
```

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm from the community module in Python

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster_community(
  gobject,
  name = "louvain_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = NULL,
  louv_random = F,
```

```

    return_gobject = TRUE,
    set_seed = F,
    seed_number = 1234
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for cluster
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>resolution</code>	resolution
<code>weight_col</code>	weight column to use for edges
<code>louv_random</code>	Will randomize the node evaluation order and the community evaluation order to get different partitions at each call
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>set_seed</code>	set seed
<code>seed_number</code>	number for seed

Details

This function is a wrapper for the Louvain algorithm implemented in Python, which can detect communities in graphs of nodes (cells). See the <https://python-louvain.readthedocs.io/en/latest/index.html> readthedocs page for more information.

Set `weight_col = NULL` to give equal weight (=1) to each edge.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster_community(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet
doLouvainCluster_multinet
```

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm from the multinet package in R.

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet(
  gobject,
  name = "louvain_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
gamma	Resolution parameter for modularity in the generalized louvain method.
omega	Inter-layer weight parameter in the generalized louvain method.
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

Details

See [glouvain_ml](#) from the multinet package in R for more information.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

doLouvainSubCluster	<i>doLouvainSubCluster</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_clus",
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_cov = 1, expression_values =
    "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 0.5,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>version</code>	version of Louvain algorithm to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution for community algorithm
<code>gamma</code>	gamma
<code>omega</code>	omega

python_path	specify specific path to python if required
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
verbose	verbose

Details

This function performs subclustering using the Louvain algorithm on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object
- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do Louvain clustering

Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[doLouvainCluster_multinet](#) and [doLouvainCluster_community](#)

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community
doLouvainSubCluster_community
```

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain community detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_comm_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_cov = 1, expression_values =
    "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
```

```

min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
k_neighbors = 10,
resolution = 0.5,
python_path = NULL,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
return_gobject = TRUE,
verbose = T
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters
<code>hvg_param</code>	parameters for calculateHVG
<code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code>	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
<code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code>	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
<code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code>	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
<code>min_nr_of_hvg</code>	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
<code>pca_param</code>	parameters for runPCA
<code>nn_param</code>	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
<code>k_neighbors</code>	number of k for createNearestNetwork
<code>resolution</code>	resolution
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Details

This function performs subclustering using the Louvain community algorithm on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object
- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do Louvain community clustering

Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[doLouvainCluster_community](#)

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet
```

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet
```

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain multinet detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_mult_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_cov = 1, expression_values =
    "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name for new clustering result
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to subcluster
<code>selected_clusters</code>	only do subclustering on these clusters

hvg_param	parameters for calculateHVG
hvg_min_perc_cells	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
hvg_mean_expr_det	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
use_all_genes_as_hvg	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA
min_nr_of_hvg	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
pca_param	parameters for runPCA
nn_param	parameters for createNearestNetwork
k_neighbors	number of k for createNearestNetwork
gamma	gamma
omega	omega
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
verbose	verbose

Details

This function performs subclustering using the Louvain multinet algorithm on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object
- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do Louvain multinet clustering

Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[doLouvainCluster_multinet](#)

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

doRandomWalkCluster *doRandomWalkCluster*

Description

Cluster cells using a random walk approach.

Usage

```
doRandomWalkCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "random_walk_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  walk_steps = 4,
  walk_clusters = 10,
  walk_weights = NA,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
walk_steps	number of walking steps
walk_clusters	number of final clusters
walk_weights	cluster column defining the walk weights
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

Details

See [cluster_walktrap](#) function from the igraph package in R for more information.

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

Examples

```
doRandomWalkCluster(gobject)
```

doSNNCluster	<i>doSNNCluster</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

Cluster cells using a SNN cluster approach.

Usage

```
doSNNCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sNN_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "kNN",
  network_name = "kNN.pca",
  k = 20,
  eps = 4,
  minPts = 16,
  borderPoints = TRUE,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for cluster
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (only works on kNN)
network_name	name of kNN network to use
k	Neighborhood size for nearest neighbor sparsification to create the shared NN graph.
eps	Two objects are only reachable from each other if they share at least eps nearest neighbors.
minPts	minimum number of points that share at least eps nearest neighbors for a point to be considered a core points.
borderPoints	should borderPoints be assigned to clusters like in DBSCAN?
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
set_seed	set seed
seed_number	number for seed

Details

See [sNNclust](#) from dbscan package

Value

giotto object with new clusters appended to cell metadata

Examples

```
doSNNCluster(gobject)
```

estimateImageBg	<i>estimateImageBg</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

helps to estimate which color is the background color of your plot

Usage

```
estimateImageBg(mg_object, top_color_range = 1:50)
```

Arguments

mg_object	magick image or Giotto image object
top_color_range	top possible background colors to return

Value

vector of pixel color frequencies and an associated barplot

Examples

```
estimateImageBg(mg_object)
```

exportGiottoViewer	<i>exportGiottoViewer</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

compute highly variable genes

Usage

```
exportGiottoViewer(
  gobject,
  output_directory = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  factor_annotations = NULL,
  numeric_annotations = NULL,
  dim_reductions,
  dim_reduction_names,
  expression_values = c("scaled", "normalized", "custom"),
  dim_red_rounding = NULL,
  dim_red_rescale = c(-20, 20),
  expression_rounding = 2,
  overwrite_dir = T,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>output_directory</code>	directory where to save the files
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	spatial enrichment results to include for annotations
<code>factor_annotations</code>	giotto cell annotations to view as factor
<code>numeric_annotations</code>	giotto cell annotations to view as numeric
<code>dim_reductions</code>	high level dimension reductions to view
<code>dim_reduction_names</code>	specific dimension reduction names
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use in Viewer
<code>dim_red_rounding</code>	numerical indicating how to round the coordinates
<code>dim_red_rescale</code>	numericals to rescale the coordinates
<code>expression_rounding</code>	numerical indicating how to round the expression data
<code>overwrite_dir</code>	overwrite files in the directory if it already existed
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Details

Giotto Viewer expects the results from Giotto Analyzer in a specific format, which is provided by this function. To include enrichment results from [createSpatialEnrich](#) include the provided spatial enrichment name (default PAGE or rank) and add the gene signature names (.e.g cell types) to the numeric annotations parameter.

Value

writes the necessary output to use in Giotto Viewer

Examples

```
exportGiottoViewer(gobject)
```

 exprCellCellcom

exprCellCellcom

Description

Cell-Cell communication scores based on expression only

Usage

```

exprCellCellcom(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 1000,
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  adjust_method = c("fdr", "bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY",
    "none"),
  adjust_target = c("genes", "cells"),
  verbose = T
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell type information
<code>random_iter</code>	number of iterations
<code>gene_set_1</code>	first specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>gene_set_2</code>	second specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>log2FC_addendum</code>	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
<code>adjust_method</code>	which method to adjust p-values
<code>adjust_target</code>	adjust multiple hypotheses at the cell or gene level
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Details

Statistical framework to identify if pairs of genes (such as ligand-receptor combinations) are expressed at higher levels than expected based on a reshuffled null distribution of gene expression values, without considering the spatial position of cells. More details will follow soon.

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on expression only

Examples

```
exprCellCellcom(gobject)
```

fDataDT

*fDataDT***Description**

show gene metadata

Usage

fDataDT(gobject)

Arguments

gobject giotto object

Value

data.table with gene metadata

Examples

pDataDT(gobject)

filterCellProximityGenes

*filterCellProximityGenes***Description**

Filter cell proximity gene scores.

Usage

```
filterCellProximityGenes(
  cpgObject,
  min_cells = 4,
  min_cells_expr = 1,
  min_int_cells = 4,
  min_int_cells_expr = 1,
  min_fdr = 0.1,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.2,
  min_zscore = 2,
  zscores_column = c("cell_type", "genes"),
  direction = c("both", "up", "down")
)
```

Arguments

cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
min_cells	minimum number of source cell type
min_cells_expr	minimum expression level for source cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting neighbor cell type
min_int_cells_expr	minimum expression level for interacting neighbor cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_zscore	minimum z-score change
zscores_column	calculate z-scores over cell types or genes
direction	differential expression directions to keep

Value

cpgObject that contains the filtered differential gene scores

Examples

```
filterCellProximityGenes(gobject)
```

filterCombinations	<i>filterCombinations</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Shows how many genes and cells are lost with combinations of thresholds.

Usage

```
filterCombinations(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_thresholds = c(1, 2),
  gene_det_in_min_cells = c(5, 50),
  min_det_genes_per_cell = c(200, 400),
  scale_x_axis = "identity",
  x_axis_offset = 0,
  scale_y_axis = "identity",
  y_axis_offset = 0,
  show_plot = TRUE,
  return_plot = FALSE,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "filterCombinations"
)
```


Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>expression_thresholds</code>	all thresholds to consider a gene expressed
<code>gene_det_in_min_cells</code>	minimum number of cells that should express a gene to consider that gene further
<code>min_det_genes_per_cell</code>	minimum number of expressed genes per cell to consider that cell further
<code>scale_x_axis</code>	ggplot transformation for x-axis (e.g. log2)
<code>x_axis_offset</code>	x-axis offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
<code>scale_y_axis</code>	ggplot transformation for y-axis (e.g. log2)
<code>y_axis_offset</code>	y-axis offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return only ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

Creates a scatterplot that visualizes the number of genes and cells that are lost with a specific combination of a gene and cell threshold given an arbitrary cutoff to call a gene expressed. This function can be used to make an informed decision at the filtering step with `filterGiotto`.

Value

list of `data.table` and `ggplot` object

Examples

```
filterCombinations(gobject)
```

filterCPG

filterCPG

Description

Filter cell proximity gene scores.

Usage

```
filterCPG(
  cpgObject,
  min_cells = 4,
  min_cells_expr = 1,
  min_int_cells = 4,
  min_int_cells_expr = 1,
  min_fdr = 0.1,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.2,
  min_zscore = 2,
  zscores_column = c("cell_type", "genes"),
  direction = c("both", "up", "down")
)
```

Arguments

cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
min_cells	minimum number of source cell type
min_cells_expr	minimum expression level for source cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting neighbor cell type
min_int_cells_expr	minimum expression level for interacting neighbor cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_zscore	minimum z-score change
zscores_column	calculate z-scores over cell types or genes
direction	differential expression directions to keep

Value

cpgObject that contains the filtered differential gene scores

Examples

```
filterCPG(gobject)
```

filterDistributions	<i>filterDistributions</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

show gene or cell distribution after filtering on expression threshold

Usage

```
filterDistributions(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_threshold = 1,
  detection = c("genes", "cells"),
  plot_type = c("histogram", "violin"),
  nr_bins = 30,
  fill_color = "lightblue",
  scale_axis = "identity",
  axis_offset = 0,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "filterDistributions"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>expression_threshold</code>	threshold to consider a gene expressed
<code>detection</code>	consider genes or cells
<code>plot_type</code>	type of plot
<code>nr_bins</code>	number of bins for histogram plot
<code>fill_color</code>	fill color for plots
<code>scale_axis</code>	ggplot transformation for axis (e.g. log2)
<code>axis_offset</code>	offset to be used together with the scaling transformation
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

ggplot object

Examples

```
filterDistributions(gobject)
```

filterGiotto

filterGiotto

Description

filter Giotto object based on expression threshold

Usage

```
filterGiotto(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_threshold = 1,
  gene_det_in_min_cells = 100,
  min_det_genes_per_cell = 100,
  verbose = F
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>expression_threshold</code>	threshold to consider a gene expressed
<code>gene_det_in_min_cells</code>	minimum # of cells that need to express a gene
<code>min_det_genes_per_cell</code>	minimum # of genes that need to be detected in a cell
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Details

The function [filterCombinations](#) can be used to explore the effect of different parameter values.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
filterGiotto(gobject)
```

```
findCellProximityGenes
      findCellProximityGenes
```

Description

Identifies genes that are differentially expressed due to proximity to other cell types.

Usage

```
findCellProximityGenes(
  gobject,
  expression_values = "normalized",
  selected_genes = NULL,
  cluster_column,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  minimum_unique_cells = 1,
  minimum_unique_int_cells = 1,
  diff_test = c("permutation", "limma", "t.test", "wilcox"),
  mean_method = c("arithmetic", "geometric"),
  offset = 0.1,
  adjust_method = c("bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY", "fdr",
    "none"),
  nr_permutations = 1000,
  exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T,
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>selected_genes</code>	subset of selected genes (optional)
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for cell types
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>minimum_unique_cells</code>	minimum number of target cells required
<code>minimum_unique_int_cells</code>	minimum number of interacting cells required
<code>diff_test</code>	which differential expression test
<code>mean_method</code>	method to use to calculate the mean
<code>offset</code>	offset value to use when calculating log2 ratio
<code>adjust_method</code>	which method to adjust p-values
<code>nr_permutations</code>	number of permutations if <code>diff_test = permutation</code>

exclude_selected_cells_from_test	exclude interacting cells other cells
do_parallel	run calculations in parallel with mclapply
cores	number of cores to use if do_parallel = TRUE

Details

Function to calculate if genes are differentially expressed in cell types when they interact (approximated by physical proximity) with other cell types. The results data.table in the cpgObject contains - at least - the following columns:

- genes: All or selected list of tested genes
- sel: average gene expression in the interacting cells from the target cell type
- other: average gene expression in the NOT-interacting cells from the target cell type
- log2fc: log2 fold-change between sel and other
- diff: spatial expression difference between sel and other
- p.value: associated p-value
- p.adj: adjusted p-value
- cell_type: target cell type
- int_cell_type: interacting cell type
- nr_select: number of cells for selected target cell type
- int_nr_select: number of cells for interacting cell type
- nr_other: number of other cells of selected target cell type
- int_nr_other: number of other cells for interacting cell type
- unif_int: cell-cell interaction

Value

cpgObject that contains the differential gene scores

Examples

```
findCellProximityGenes(gobject)
```

findCPG

findCPG

Description

Identifies genes that are differentially expressed due to proximity to other cell types.

Usage

```
findCPG(
  gobject,
  expression_values = "normalized",
  selected_genes = NULL,
  cluster_column,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  minimum_unique_cells = 1,
  minimum_unique_int_cells = 1,
  diff_test = c("permutation", "limma", "t.test", "wilcox"),
  mean_method = c("arithmetic", "geometric"),
  offset = 0.1,
  adjust_method = c("bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY", "fdr",
    "none"),
  nr_permutations = 100,
  exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T,
  do_parallel = TRUE,
  cores = NA
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>selected_genes</code>	subset of selected genes (optional)
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for cell types
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>minimum_unique_cells</code>	minimum number of target cells required
<code>minimum_unique_int_cells</code>	minimum number of interacting cells required
<code>diff_test</code>	which differential expression test
<code>mean_method</code>	method to use to calculate the mean
<code>offset</code>	offset value to use when calculating log2 ratio
<code>adjust_method</code>	which method to adjust p-values
<code>nr_permutations</code>	number of permutations if <code>diff_test = permutation</code>
<code>exclude_selected_cells_from_test</code>	exclude interacting cells other cells
<code>do_parallel</code>	run calculations in parallel with <code>mclapply</code>
<code>cores</code>	number of cores to use if <code>do_parallel = TRUE</code>

Details

Function to calculate if genes are differentially expressed in cell types when they interact (approximated by physical proximity) with other cell types. The results data.table in the `cpgObject` contains - at least - the following columns:

- genes: All or selected list of tested genes
- sel: average gene expression in the interacting cells from the target cell type
- other: average gene expression in the NOT-interacting cells from the target cell type
- log2fc: log2 fold-change between sel and other
- diff: spatial expression difference between sel and other
- p.value: associated p-value
- p.adj: adjusted p-value
- cell_type: target cell type
- int_cell_type: interacting cell type
- nr_select: number of cells for selected target cell type
- int_nr_select: number of cells for interacting cell type
- nr_other: number of other cells of selected target cell type
- int_nr_other: number of other cells for interacting cell type
- unif_int: cell-cell interaction

Value

cpgObject that contains the differential gene scores

Examples

```
findCPG(gobject)
```

findGiniMarkers

findGiniMarkers

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on gini detection and expression scores.

Usage

```
findGiniMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.2,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.2,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  min_genes = 5
)
```


Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>group_1</code>	group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_2</code>	group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>min_expr_gini_score</code>	filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression
<code>min_det_gini_score</code>	filter on minimum gini coefficient for detection
<code>detection_threshold</code>	detection threshold for gene expression
<code>rank_score</code>	rank scores for both detection and expression to include
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum number of top genes to return

Details

Detection of marker genes using the https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gini_coefficient gini coefficient is based on the following steps/principles per gene:

- 1. calculate average expression per cluster
- 2. calculate detection fraction per cluster
- 3. calculate gini-coefficient for av. expression values over all clusters
- 4. calculate gini-coefficient for detection fractions over all clusters
- 5. convert gini-scores to rank scores
- 6. for each gene create combined score = detection rank x expression rank x expr gini-coefficient x detection gini-coefficient
- 7. for each gene sort on expression and detection rank and combined score

As a results "top gini" genes are genes that are very selectively expressed in a specific cluster, however not always expressed in all cells of that cluster. In other words highly specific, but not necessarily sensitive at the single-cell level.

To perform differential expression between cluster groups you need to specify cluster IDs to the parameters `group_1` and `group_2`.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findGiniMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all
      findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner based on gini detection and expression scores.

Usage

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  min_genes = 4,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>min_expr_gini_score</code>	filter on minimum gini coefficient on expression
<code>min_det_gini_score</code>	filter on minimum gini coefficient on detection
<code>detection_threshold</code>	detection threshold for gene expression
<code>rank_score</code>	rank scores for both detection and expression to include
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum number of top genes to return
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Value

data.table with marker genes

See Also

[findGiniMarkers](#)

Examples

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

findMarkers	<i>findMarkers</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters.

Usage

```
findMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  method = c("scrn", "gini", "mast"),
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  min_genes = 4,
  group_1_name = NULL,
  group_2_name = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
method	method to use to detect differentially expressed genes
subset_clusters	selection of clusters to compare
group_1	group 1 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
group_2	group 2 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison
min_expr_gini_score	gini: filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression
min_det_gini_score	gini: filter minimum gini coefficient for detection
detection_threshold	gini: detection threshold for gene expression

rank_score	gini: rank scores to include
min_genes	minimum number of top genes to return (for gini)
group_1_name	mast: custom name for group_1 clusters
group_2_name	mast: custom name for group_2 clusters
adjust_columns	mast: column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
...	additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scran or zlm function in MAST

Details

Wrapper for all individual functions to detect marker genes for clusters.

Value

data.table with marker genes

See Also

[findScranMarkers](#), [findGiniMarkers](#) and [findMastMarkers](#)

Examples

```
findMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all
```

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner.

Usage

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  method = c("scran", "gini", "mast"),
  pval = 0.01,
  logFC = 0.5,
  min_genes = 10,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>method</code>	method to use to detect differentially expressed genes
<code>pval</code>	scan & mast: filter on minimal p-value
<code>logFC</code>	scan & mast: filter on logFC
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
<code>min_expr_gini_score</code>	gini: filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression
<code>min_det_gini_score</code>	gini: filter minimum gini coefficient for detection
<code>detection_threshold</code>	gini: detection threshold for gene expression
<code>rank_score</code>	gini: rank scores to include
<code>adjust_columns</code>	mast: column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scan or zlm function in MAST

Details

Wrapper for all one vs all functions to detect marker genes for clusters.

Value

data.table with marker genes

See Also

[findScranMarkers_one_vs_all](#), [findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all](#) and [findMastMarkers_one_vs_all](#)

Examples

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

findMastMarkers	<i>findMastMarkers</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on the MAST package.

Usage

```
findMastMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_1_name = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  group_2_name = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>group_1</code>	group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_1_name</code>	custom name for <code>group_1</code> clusters
<code>group_2</code>	group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_2_name</code>	custom name for <code>group_2</code> clusters
<code>adjust_columns</code>	column in <code>pDataDT</code> to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the <code>zlm</code> function in MAST

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the [zlm](#) from the MAST package to detect differentially expressed genes.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findMastMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all  
  findMastMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner based on the MAST package.

Usage

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  cluster_column,  
  subset_clusters = NULL,  
  adjust_columns = NULL,  
  pval = 0.001,  
  logFC = 1,  
  min_genes = 10,  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	gene expression values to use
cluster_column	clusters to use
subset_clusters	selection of clusters to compare
adjust_columns	column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate)
pval	filter on minimal p-value
logFC	filter on logFC
min_genes	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
verbose	be verbose
...	additional parameters for the zlm function in MAST

Value

data.table with marker genes

See Also

[findMastMarkers](#)

Examples

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

findNetworkNeighbors *findNetworkNeighbors*

Description

Find the spatial neighbors for a selected group of cells within the selected spatial network.

Usage

```
findNetworkNeighbors(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name,
  source_cell_ids = NULL,
  name = "nb_cells"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network
source_cell_ids	cell ids for which you want to know the spatial neighbors
name	name of the results

Value

data.table

Examples

```
findNetworkNeighbors(gobject)
```

findScranMarkers *findScranMarkers*

Description

Identify marker genes for all or selected clusters based on scran's implementation of findMarkers.

Usage

```
findScranMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  ...
)
```


Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	selection of clusters to compare
<code>group_1</code>	group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>group_2</code>	group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the <code>findMarkers</code> function in <code>scrn</code>

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the [findMarkers](#) function from the `scrn` package.

To perform differential expression between cluster groups you need to specify cluster IDs to the parameters `group_1` and `group_2`.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findScranMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all
  findScranMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner based on `scrn`'s implementation of `findMarkers`.

Usage

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  pval = 0.01,
  logFC = 0.5,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	clusters to use
<code>subset_clusters</code>	subset of clusters to use
<code>pval</code>	filter on minimal p-value
<code>logFC</code>	filter on logFC
<code>min_genes</code>	minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scan

Value

data.table with marker genes

See Also

[findScranMarkers](#)

Examples

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

get10Xmatrix

get10Xmatrix

Description

This function creates an expression matrix from a 10X structured folder

Usage

```
get10Xmatrix(path_to_data, gene_column_index = 1)
```

Arguments

<code>path_to_data</code>	path to the 10X folder
<code>gene_column_index</code>	which column from the features or genes .tsv file to use for row ids

Details

A typical 10X folder is named `raw_feature_bc_matrix` or `raw_feature_bc_matrix` and it has 3 files:

- `barcodes.tsv(.gz)`
- `features.tsv(.gz)` or `genes.tsv(.gz)`
- `matrix.mtx(.gz)`

By default the first column of the features or genes .tsv file will be used, however if multiple annotations are provided (e.g. ensembl gene ids and gene symbols) the user can select another column.

Value

sparse expression matrix from 10X

getClusterSimilarity	<i>getClusterSimilarity</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

Creates data.table with pairwise correlation scores between each cluster.

Usage

```
getClusterSimilarity(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  cluster_column,  
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman")  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cor	correlation score to calculate distance

Details

Creates data.table with pairwise correlation scores between each cluster and the group size (# of cells) for each cluster. This information can be used together with mergeClusters to combine very similar or small clusters into bigger clusters.

Value

data.table

Examples

```
getClusterSimilarity(gobject)
```

getDendrogramSplits	<i>getDendrogramSplits</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

Split dendrogram at each node and keep the leave (label) information..

Usage

```
getDendrogramSplits(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  h = NULL,
  h_color = "red",
  show_dend = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cor</code>	correlation score to calculate distance
<code>distance</code>	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
<code>h</code>	height of horizontal lines to plot
<code>h_color</code>	color of horizontal lines
<code>show_dend</code>	show dendrogram
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Details

Creates a data.table with three columns and each row represents a node in the dendrogram. For each node the height of the node is given together with the two subdendrograms. This information can be used to determine in a hierarchical manner differentially expressed marker genes at each node.

Value

data.table object

Examples

```
getDendrogramSplits(gobject)
```

getDistinctColors	<i>getDistinctColors</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Returns a number of distinct colors based on the RGB scale

Usage

```
getDistinctColors(n)
```

Arguments

n	number of colors wanted
---	-------------------------

Value

number of distinct colors

getGiottoImage	<i>getGiottoImage</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

get get a giotto image from a giotto object

Usage

```
getGiottoImage(gobject, image_name)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
image_name	name of giotto image showGiottoImageNames

Value

a giotto image

Examples

```
getGiottoImage(gobject)
```

getSpatialDataset	<i>getSpatialDataset</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

This package will automatically download the spatial locations and expression matrix for the chosen dataset. These files are already in the right format to create a Giotto object.

Usage

```
getSpatialDataset(
  dataset = c("ST_OB", "seqfish_SS_cortex", "seqfish_OB", "starmap_3D_cortex",
    "osmfish_SS_cortex", "merfish_preoptic", "codex_spleen"),
  directory = getwd()
)
```

Arguments

dataset	dataset to download
directory	directory to save the data to

giotto-class	<i>S4 giotto Class</i>
--------------	------------------------

Description

Framework of giotto object to store and work with spatial expression data

Slots

raw_exprs	raw expression counts
norm_expr	normalized expression counts
norm_scaled_expr	normalized and scaled expression counts
custom_expr	custom normalized counts
spatial_locs	spatial location coordinates for cells
cell_metadata	metadata for cells
gene_metadata	metadata for genes
cell_ID	unique cell IDs
gene_ID	unique gene IDs
spatial_network	spatial network in data.table/data.frame format
spatial_grid	spatial grid in data.table/data.frame format
spatial_enrichment	slot to save spatial enrichment-like results
dimension_reduction	slot to save dimension reduction coordinates
nn_network	nearest neighbor network in igraph format
images	slot to store giotto images

parameters slot to save parameters that have been used
 instructions slot for global function instructions
 offset_file offset file used to stitch together image fields
 OS_platform Operating System to run Giotto analysis on

heatmSpatialCorGenes *heatmSpatialCorGenes*

Description

Create heatmap of spatially correlated genes

Usage

```
heatmSpatialCorGenes(
  gobject,
  spatCorObject,
  use_clus_name = NULL,
  show_cluster_annot = TRUE,
  show_row_dend = T,
  show_column_dend = F,
  show_row_names = F,
  show_column_names = F,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "heatmSpatialCorGenes",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
spatCorObject	spatial correlation object
use_clus_name	name of clusters to visualize (from clusterSpatialCorGenes())
show_cluster_annot	show cluster annotation on top of heatmap
show_row_dend	show row dendrogram
show_column_dend	show column dendrogram
show_row_names	show row names
show_column_names	show column names
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]

save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
 ... additional parameters to the [Heatmap](#) function from ComplexHeatmap

Value

Heatmap generated by ComplexHeatmap

Examples

```
heatmSpatialCorGenes(gobject)
```

hyperGeometricEnrich *hyperGeometricEnrich*

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a hypergeometric test.

Usage

```
hyperGeometricEnrich(...)
```

Arguments

... Arguments passed on to [runHyperGeometricEnrich](#)
 gobject Giotto object
 sign_matrix Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
 expression_values expression values to use
 reverse_log_scale reverse expression values from log scale
 logbase log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE
 top_percentage percentage of cells that will be considered to have gene expression with matrix binarization
 output_enrichment how to return enrichment output
 p_value calculate p-values (boolean, default = FALSE)
 name to give to spatial enrichment results, default = rank
 return_gobject return giotto object

See Also

[runHyperGeometricEnrich](#)

```
insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D
      insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D
```

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression in a virtual cross section according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  mesh_grid_color = "#1f77b4",
  mesh_grid_width = 3,
  mesh_grid_style = "dot",
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  show_other_cells = F,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatGenePlot3D_with_cross_section",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>crossSection_obj</code>	cross section object as alternative input. default = NULL.
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>mesh_grid_color</code>	color for the meshgrid lines
<code>mesh_grid_width</code>	width for the meshgrid lines
<code>mesh_grid_style</code>	style for the meshgrid lines
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')

show_other_cells	display not selected cells
axis_scale	axis_scale
custom_ratio	custom_ratio
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	parameters for spatGenePlot3D

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

```
insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D
      insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D
```

Description

Visualize the meshgrid lines of cross section together with cells

Usage

```
insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D(
  gobject,
  crossSection_obj = NULL,
  name = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  mesh_grid_color = "#1f77b4",
  mesh_grid_width = 3,
  mesh_grid_style = "dot",
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  show_other_cells = F,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  default_save_name = "spat3D_with_cross_section",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>crossSection_obj</code>	cross section object as alternative input. default = NULL.
<code>name</code>	name of virtual cross section to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>mesh_grid_color</code>	color for the meshgrid lines
<code>mesh_grid_width</code>	width for the meshgrid lines
<code>mesh_grid_style</code>	style for the meshgrid lines
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>axis_scale</code>	axis_scale
<code>custom_ratio</code>	custom_ratio
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
<code>...</code>	parameters for spatPlot3D

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D(gobject)
```

jackstrawPlot	<i>jackstrawPlot</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

identify significant principal components (PCs)

Usage

```
jackstrawPlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  center = FALSE,
  scale_unit = FALSE,
  ncp = 20,
  ylim = c(0, 1),
  iter = 10,
  threshold = 0.01,
  verbose = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "jackstrawPlot"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>genes_to_use</code>	subset of genes to use for PCA
<code>center</code>	center data before PCA
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features before PCA
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>ylim</code>	y-axis limits on jackstraw plot
<code>iter</code>	number of iterations for jackstraw
<code>threshold</code>	p-value threshold to call a PC significant
<code>verbose</code>	show progress of jackstraw method
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

The Jackstraw method uses the [permutationPA](#) function. By systematically permuting genes it identifies robust, and thus significant, PCs.

Value

ggplot object for jackstraw method

Examples

jackstrawPlot(gobject)

loadHMRF	<i>loadHMRF</i>
----------	-----------------

Description

load previous HMRF

Usage

```
loadHMRF(  
  name_used = "test",  
  output_folder_used,  
  k_used = 10,  
  betas_used,  
  python_path_used  
)
```

Arguments

name_used	name of HMRF that was run
output_folder_used	output folder that was used
k_used	number of HMRF domains that was tested
betas_used	betas that were tested
python_path_used	python path that was used

Details

Description of HMRF parameters ...

Value

reloads a previous ran HMRF from doHRMF

Examples

loadHMRF(gobject)

makeSignMatrixPAGE	<i>makeSignMatrixPAGE</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Function to convert a list of signature genes (e.g. for cell types or processes) into a binary matrix format that can be used with the PAGE enrichment option. Each cell type or process should have a vector of cell-type or process specific genes. These vectors need to be combined into a list (sign_list). The names of the cell types or processes that are provided in the list need to be given (sign_names).

Usage

```
makeSignMatrixPAGE(sign_names, sign_list)
```

Arguments

- sign_names vector with names for each provided gene signature
- sign_list list of genes (signature)

Value

matrix

See Also

[PAGEEnrich](#)

Examples

```
makeSignMatrixPAGE()
```

makeSignMatrixRank	<i>makeSignMatrixRank</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Function to convert a single-cell count matrix and a corresponding single-cell cluster vector into a rank matrix that can be used with the Rank enrichment option.

Usage

```
makeSignMatrixRank(sc_matrix, sc_cluster_ids, gobject = NULL)
```

Arguments

- sc_matrix matrix of single-cell RNAseq expression data
- sc_cluster_ids vector of cluster ids
- gobject if giotto object is given then only genes present in both datasets will be considered

Value

matrix

See Also[rankEnrich](#)**Examples**

```
makeSignMatrixRank()
```

mergeClusters	<i>mergeClusters</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

Usage

```
mergeClusters(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  new_cluster_name = "merged_cluster",
  min_cor_score = 0.8,
  max_group_size = 20,
  force_min_group_size = 10,
  max_sim_clusters = 10,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cor	correlation score to calculate distance
new_cluster_name	new name for merged clusters
min_cor_score	min correlation score to merge pairwise clusters
max_group_size	max cluster size that can be merged
force_min_group_size	size of clusters that will be merged with their most similar neighbor(s)
max_sim_clusters	maximum number of clusters to potentially merge to reach force_min_group_size
return_gobject	return giotto object
verbose	be verbose

Details

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster. To avoid large clusters to merge the `max_group_size` can be lowered. Small clusters can be forcibly merged with their most similar pairwise cluster by adjusting the `force_min_group_size` parameter. Clusters smaller than this value will be merged independent on the provided `min_cor_score` value. The `force_min_group_size` might not always be reached if clusters have already been merged before. A giotto object is returned by default, if FALSE then the merging vector will be returned.

Value

Giotto object

Examples

```
mergeClusters(gobject)
```

normalizeGiotto	<i>normalizeGiotto</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

fast normalize and/or scale expresion values of Giotto object

Usage

```
normalizeGiotto(  
  gobject,  
  norm_methods = c("standard", "osmFISH"),  
  library_size_norm = TRUE,  
  scalefactor = 6000,  
  log_norm = TRUE,  
  log_offset = 1,  
  logbase = 2,  
  scale_genes = T,  
  scale_cells = T,  
  scale_order = c("first_genes", "first_cells"),  
  verbose = F  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>norm_methods</code>	normalization method to use
<code>library_size_norm</code>	normalize cells by library size
<code>scalefactor</code>	scale factor to use after library size normalization
<code>log_norm</code>	transform values to log-scale
<code>log_offset</code>	offset value to add to expression matrix, default = 1
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use to log normalize expression values

<code>scale_genes</code>	z-score genes over all cells
<code>scale_cells</code>	z-score cells over all genes
<code>scale_order</code>	order to scale genes and cells
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Details

Currently there are two 'methods' to normalize your raw counts data.

A. The standard method follows the standard protocol which can be adjusted using the provided parameters and follows the following order:

- 1. Data normalization for total library size and scaling by a custom scale-factor.
- 2. Log transformation of data.
- 3. Z-scoring of data by genes and/or cells.

B. The normalization method as provided by the osmFISH paper is also implemented:

- 1. First normalize genes, for each gene divide the counts by the total gene count and multiply by the total number of genes.
- 2. Next normalize cells, for each cell divide the normalized gene counts by the total counts per cell and multiply by the total number of cells.

This data will be saved in the Giotto slot for custom expression.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
normalizeGiotto(gobject)
```

PAGEEnrich

runPAGEEnrich

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using PAGE.

Usage

```
PAGEEnrich(...)
```

Arguments

... Arguments passed on to [runPAGEEnrich](#)

`gobject` Giotto object

`sign_matrix` Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process

`expression_values` expression values to use

`reverse_log_scale` reverse expression values from log scale

`logbase` log base to use if `reverse_log_scale = TRUE`

`output_enrichment` how to return enrichment output

`p_value` calculate p-values (boolean, default = FALSE)

`n_times` number of permutations to calculate for `p_value`

`name` to give to spatial enrichment results, default = PAGE

`return_gobject` return giotto object

See Also

[runPAGEEnrich](#)

<code>pDataDT</code>	<i>pDataDT</i>
----------------------	----------------

Description

show cell metadata

Usage

`pDataDT(gobject)`

Arguments

`gobject` giotto object

Value

data.table with cell metadata

Examples

`pDataDT(gobject)`

plotCCcomDotplot	<i>plotCCcomDotplot</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Plots dotplot for ligand-receptor communication scores in cell-cell interactions

Usage

```
plotCCcomDotplot(
  gobject,
  comScores,
  selected_LR = NULL,
  selected_cell_LR = NULL,
  show_LR_names = TRUE,
  show_cell_LR_names = TRUE,
  cluster_on = c("PI", "LR_expr", "log2fc"),
  cor_method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"),
  aggl_method = c("ward.D", "ward.D2", "single", "complete", "average", "mcquitty",
    "median", "centroid"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCCcomDotplot"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>comScores</code>	communication scores from exprCellCellcom or spatCellCellcom
<code>selected_LR</code>	selected ligand-receptor combinations
<code>selected_cell_LR</code>	selected cell-cell combinations for ligand-receptor combinations
<code>show_LR_names</code>	show ligand-receptor names
<code>show_cell_LR_names</code>	show cell-cell names
<code>cluster_on</code>	values to use for clustering of cell-cell and ligand-receptor pairs
<code>cor_method</code>	correlation method used for clustering
<code>aggl_method</code>	agglomeration method used by hclust
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotCCcomDotplot(CPGscores)
```

plotCCcomHeatmap	<i>plotCCcomHeatmap</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Plots heatmap for ligand-receptor communication scores in cell-cell interactions

Usage

```
plotCCcomHeatmap(  
  gobject,  
  comScores,  
  selected_LR = NULL,  
  selected_cell_LR = NULL,  
  show_LR_names = TRUE,  
  show_cell_LR_names = TRUE,  
  show = c("PI", "LR_expr", "log2fc"),  
  cor_method = c("pearson", "kendall", "spearman"),  
  aggl_method = c("ward.D", "ward.D2", "single", "complete", "average", "mcquitty",  
    "median", "centroid"),  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "plotCCcomHeatmap"  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
comScores	communication scores from exprCellCellcom or spatCellCellcom
selected_LR	selected ligand-receptor combinations
selected_cell_LR	selected cell-cell combinations for ligand-receptor combinations
show_LR_names	show ligand-receptor names
show_cell_LR_names	show cell-cell names
show	values to show on heatmap
cor_method	correlation method used for clustering
aggl_method	agglomeration method used by hclust
show_plot	show plots

return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotCCcomHeatmap(CPGscores)
```

```
plotCellProximityGenes
```

plotCellProximityGenes

Description

Create visualization for cell proximity gene scores

Usage

```
plotCellProximityGenes(
  gobject,
  cpgObject,
  method = c("volcano", "cell_barplot", "cell-cell", "cell_sankey", "heatmap",
    "dotplot"),
  min_cells = 4,
  min_cells_expr = 1,
  min_int_cells = 4,
  min_int_cells_expr = 1,
  min_fdr = 0.1,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.2,
  min_zscore = 2,
  zscores_column = c("cell_type", "genes"),
  direction = c("both", "up", "down"),
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCellProximityGenes"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
method	plotting method to use
min_cells	minimum number of source cell type
min_cells_expr	minimum expression level for source cell type
min_int_cells	minimum number of interacting neighbor cell type
min_int_cells_expr	minimum expression level for interacting neighbor cell type
min_fdr	minimum adjusted p-value
min_spat_diff	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
min_log2_fc	minimum log2 fold-change
min_zscore	minimum z-score change
zscores_column	calculate z-scores over cell types or genes
direction	differential expression directions to keep
cell_color_code	vector of colors with cell types as names
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

plot

Examples

```
plotCellProximityGenes(CPGscores)
```

plotCombineCCcom	<i>plotCombineCCcom</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Create visualization for combined (pairwise) cell proximity gene scores

Usage

```
plotCombineCCcom(
  gobject,
  combCCcom,
  selected_LR = NULL,
  selected_cell_LR = NULL,
  detail_plot = T,
  simple_plot = F,
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),
  facet_scales = "fixed",
  facet_ncol = length(selected_LR),
  facet_nrow = length(selected_cell_LR),
  colors = c("#9932CC", "#FF8C00"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCombineCCcom"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
combCCcom	combined communication scores, output from combCCcom()
selected_LR	selected ligand-receptor pair
selected_cell_LR	selected cell-cell interaction pair for ligand-receptor pair
detail_plot	show detailed info in both interacting cell types
simple_plot	show a simplified plot
simple_plot_facet	facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
facet_scales	ggplot facet scales parameter
facet_ncol	ggplot facet ncol parameter
facet_nrow	ggplot facet nrow parameter
colors	vector with two colors to use
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotCombineCCcom(CPGscores)
```

```
plotCombineCellCellCommunication
      plotCombineCellCellCommunication
```

Description

Create visualization for combined (pairwise) cell proximity gene scores

Usage

```
plotCombineCellCellCommunication(
  gobject,
  combCCcom,
  selected_LR = NULL,
  selected_cell_LR = NULL,
  detail_plot = T,
  simple_plot = F,
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),
  facet_scales = "fixed",
  facet_ncol = length(selected_LR),
  facet_nrow = length(selected_cell_LR),
  colors = c("#9932CC", "#FF8C00"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCombineCellCellCommunication"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>combCCcom</code>	combined communication scores, output from <code>combCCcom()</code>
<code>selected_LR</code>	selected ligand-receptor pair
<code>selected_cell_LR</code>	selected cell-cell interaction pair for ligand-receptor pair
<code>detail_plot</code>	show detailed info in both interacting cell types
<code>simple_plot</code>	show a simplified plot
<code>simple_plot_facet</code>	facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
<code>facet_scales</code>	ggplot facet scales parameter
<code>facet_ncol</code>	ggplot facet ncol parameter
<code>facet_nrow</code>	ggplot facet nrow parameter
<code>colors</code>	vector with two colors to use
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]

save_param list of saving parameters from [all_plots_save_function](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotCombineCellCellCommunication(CPGscores)
```

```
plotCombineCellProximityGenes
      plotCombineCellProximityGenes
```

Description

Create visualization for combined (pairwise) cell proximity gene scores

Usage

```
plotCombineCellProximityGenes(
  gobject,
  combCpgObject,
  selected_interactions = NULL,
  selected_gene_to_gene = NULL,
  detail_plot = T,
  simple_plot = F,
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),
  facet_scales = "fixed",
  facet_ncol = length(selected_gene_to_gene),
  facet_nrow = length(selected_interactions),
  colors = c("#9932CC", "#FF8C00"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCombineCPG"
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 combCpgObject CPGscores, output from combineCellProximityGenes()
 selected_interactions interactions to show
 selected_gene_to_gene pairwise gene combinations to show
 detail_plot show detailed info in both interacting cell types

simple_plot	show a simplified plot
simple_plot_facet	facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
facet_scales	ggplot facet scales paramter
facet_ncol	ggplot facet ncol parameter
facet_nrow	ggplot facet nrow parameter
colors	vector with two colors to use
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotCombineCellProximityGenes(CPGscores)
```

plotCombineCPG	<i>plotCombineCPG</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

Create visualization for combined (pairwise) cell proximity gene scores

Usage

```
plotCombineCPG(
  gobject,
  combCpgObject,
  selected_interactions = NULL,
  selected_gene_to_gene = NULL,
  detail_plot = T,
  simple_plot = F,
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),
  facet_scales = "fixed",
  facet_ncol = length(selected_gene_to_gene),
  facet_nrow = length(selected_interactions),
  colors = c("#9932CC", "#FF8C00"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotCombineCPG"
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
combCpgObject CPGscores, output from `combineCellProximityGenes()`
selected_interactions
 interactions to show
selected_gene_to_gene
 pairwise gene combinations to show
detail_plot show detailed info in both interacting cell types
simple_plot show a simplified plot
simple_plot_facet
 facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
facet_scales ggplot facet scales paramter
facet_ncol ggplot facet ncol parameter
facet_nrow ggplot facet nrow parameter
colors vector with two colors to use
show_plot show plots
return_plot return plotting object
save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters from [all_plots_save_function](#)
default_save_name
 default save name for saving, don't change, change `save_name` in `save_param`

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotCombineCPG(CPGscores)
```

plotCPG

plotCPG

Description

Create visualization for cell proximity gene scores

Usage

```
plotCPG(
  gobject,
  cpgObject,
  method = c("volcano", "cell_barplot", "cell-cell", "cell_sankey", "heatmap",
    "dotplot"),
  min_cells = 5,
  min_cells_expr = 1,
  min_int_cells = 3,
```

```

    min_int_cells_expr = 1,
    min_fdr = 0.05,
    min_spat_diff = 0.2,
    min_log2_fc = 0.2,
    min_zscore = 2,
    zscores_column = c("cell_type", "genes"),
    direction = c("both", "up", "down"),
    cell_color_code = NULL,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "plotCPG"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cpgObject</code>	cell proximity gene score object
<code>method</code>	plotting method to use
<code>min_cells</code>	minimum number of source cell type
<code>min_cells_expr</code>	minimum expression level for source cell type
<code>min_int_cells</code>	minimum number of interacting neighbor cell type
<code>min_int_cells_expr</code>	minimum expression level for interacting neighbor cell type
<code>min_fdr</code>	minimum adjusted p-value
<code>min_spat_diff</code>	minimum absolute spatial expression difference
<code>min_log2_fc</code>	minimum log2 fold-change
<code>min_zscore</code>	minimum z-score change
<code>zscores_column</code>	calculate z-scores over cell types or genes
<code>direction</code>	differential expression directions to keep
<code>cell_color_code</code>	vector of colors with cell types as names
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

plot

Examples

```
plotCPG(CPGscores)
```

plotGiottoImage	<i>plotGiottoImage</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

get plot a giotto image from a giotto object

Usage

```
plotGiottoImage(gobject, image_name)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
image_name	name of giotto image showGiottoImageNames

Value

plot

Examples

```
plotGiottoImage(gobject)
```

plotHeatmap	<i>plotHeatmap</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Creates heatmap for genes and clusters.

Usage

```
plotHeatmap(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  cluster_column = NULL,  
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),  
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,  
  cluster_color_code = NULL,  
  cluster_cor_method = "pearson",  
  cluster_hclust_method = "ward.D",  
  gene_order = c("correlation", "custom"),  
  gene_custom_order = NULL,  
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",  
  gene_hclust_method = "complete",  
  show_values = c("rescaled", "z-scaled", "original"),  
  size_vertical_lines = 1.1,  
  gradient_colors = c("blue", "yellow", "red"),
```

```

    gene_label_selection = NULL,
    axis_text_y_size = NULL,
    legend_nrows = 1,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "plotHeatmap"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to use
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cluster_order</code>	method to determine cluster order
<code>cluster_custom_order</code>	custom order for clusters
<code>cluster_color_code</code>	color code for clusters
<code>cluster_cor_method</code>	method for cluster correlation
<code>cluster_hclust_method</code>	method for hierarchical clustering of clusters
<code>gene_order</code>	method to determine gene order
<code>gene_custom_order</code>	custom order for genes
<code>gene_cor_method</code>	method for gene correlation
<code>gene_hclust_method</code>	method for hierarchical clustering of genes
<code>show_values</code>	which values to show on heatmap
<code>size_vertical_lines</code>	sizes for vertical lines
<code>gradient_colors</code>	colors for heatmap gradient
<code>gene_label_selection</code>	subset of genes to show on y-axis
<code>axis_text_y_size</code>	size for y-axis text
<code>legend_nrows</code>	number of rows for the cluster legend
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name

Details

If you want to display many genes there are 2 ways to proceed:

- 1. set `axis_text_y_size` to a really small value and show all genes
- 2. provide a subset of genes to display to `gene_label_selection`

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
## Not run:
plotHeatmap(gobject)

## End(Not run)
```

plotICG	<i>plotICG</i>
---------	----------------

Description

Create barplot to visualize interaction changed genes

Usage

```
plotICG(
  gobject,
  cpqObject,
  source_type,
  source_markers,
  ICG_genes,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotICG"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cpqObject</code>	cell proximity gene score object
<code>source_type</code>	cell type of the source cell
<code>source_markers</code>	markers for the source cell type
<code>ICG_genes</code>	named character vector of ICG genes
<code>cell_color_code</code>	cell color code for the interacting cell types
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots

return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

plot

Examples

```
plotICG(CPGscores)
```

```
plotInteractionChangedGenes
      plotInteractionChangedGenes
```

Description

Create barplot to visualize interaction changed genes

Usage

```
plotInteractionChangedGenes(
  gobject,
  cpgObject,
  source_type,
  source_markers,
  ICG_genes,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotInteractionChangedGenes"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
cpgObject	cell proximity gene score object
source_type	cell type of the source cell
source_markers	markers for the source cell type
ICG_genes	named character vector of ICG genes
cell_color_code	cell color code for the interacting cell types
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object

save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters from [all_plots_save_function](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

plot

Examples

```
plotInteractionChangedGenes(CPGscores)
```

```
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap
      plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap
```

Description

Creates heatmap for numeric cell metadata within aggregated clusters.

Usage

```
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap(
  gobject,
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  value_cols = NULL,
  first_meta_col = NULL,
  second_meta_col = NULL,
  show_values = c("zscores", "original", "zscores_rescaled"),
  custom_cluster_order = NULL,
  clus_cor_method = "pearson",
  clus_cluster_method = "complete",
  custom_values_order = NULL,
  values_cor_method = "pearson",
  values_cluster_method = "complete",
  midpoint = 0,
  x_text_size = 8,
  x_text_angle = 45,
  y_text_size = 8,
  strip_text_size = 8,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>metadata_cols</code>	annotation columns found in <code>pDataDT(gobject)</code>
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	spatial enrichment results to include
<code>value_cols</code>	value columns to use
<code>first_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the x-axis factor
<code>second_meta_col</code>	if more than 1 metadata column, select the facetting factor
<code>show_values</code>	which values to show on heatmap
<code>custom_cluster_order</code>	custom cluster order (default = NULL)
<code>clus_cor_method</code>	correlation method for clusters
<code>clus_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the clusters
<code>custom_values_order</code>	custom values order (default = NULL)
<code>values_cor_method</code>	correlation method for values
<code>values_cluster_method</code>	hierarchical cluster method for the values
<code>midpoint</code>	midpoint of <code>show_values</code>
<code>x_text_size</code>	size of x-axis text
<code>x_text_angle</code>	angle of x-axis text
<code>y_text_size</code>	size of y-axis text
<code>strip_text_size</code>	size of strip text
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

Creates heatmap for the average values of selected value columns in the different annotation groups.

Value

ggplot or data.table

See Also

[plotMetaDataHeatmap](#) for gene expression instead of numeric cell annotation data.

Examples

```
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap(gobject)
```

plotMetaDataHeatmap	<i>plotMetaDataHeatmap</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

Creates heatmap for genes within aggregated clusters.

Usage

```
plotMetaDataHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  first_meta_col = NULL,
  second_meta_col = NULL,
  show_values = c("zscores", "original", "zscores_rescaled"),
  custom_cluster_order = NULL,
  clus_cor_method = "pearson",
  clus_cluster_method = "complete",
  custom_gene_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_cluster_method = "complete",
  gradient_color = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = 0,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  x_text_size = 10,
  x_text_angle = 45,
  y_text_size = 10,
  strip_text_size = 8,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotMetaDataHeatmap"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
metadata_cols	annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)
selected_genes	subset of genes to use
first_meta_col	if more than 1 metadata column, select the x-axis factor
second_meta_col	if more than 1 metadata column, select the facetting factor
show_values	which values to show on heatmap
custom_cluster_order	custom cluster order (default = NULL)

clus_cor_method	correlation method for clusters
clus_cluster_method	hierarchical cluster method for the clusters
custom_gene_order	custom gene order (default = NULL)
gene_cor_method	correlation method for genes
gene_cluster_method	hierarchical cluster method for the genes
gradient_color	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
x_text_size	size of x-axis text
x_text_angle	angle of x-axis text
y_text_size	size of y-axis text
strip_text_size	size of strip text
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name

Details

Creates heatmap for the average expression of selected genes in the different annotation/cluster groups. Calculation of cluster or gene order is done on the provided expression values, but visualization is by default on the z-scores. Other options are the original values or z-scores rescaled per gene (-1 to 1).

Value

ggplot or data.table

See Also

[plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap](#) for numeric cell annotation instead of gene expression.

Examples

```
plotMetaDataHeatmap(gobject)
```

plotPCA

*plotPCA***Description**

Short wrapper for PCA visualization

Usage

```
plotPCA(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "pca", default_save_name = "PCA", ...)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	name of PCA
default_save_name	default save name of PCA plot
...	Arguments passed on to dimPlot2D
group_by	create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
group_by_subset	subset the group_by factor column
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
center_point_border_col	border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke	border stroke size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels

edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
 point_shape point with border or not (border or no_border)
 point_size size of point (cell)
 point_alpha transparency of point
 point_border_col color of border around points
 point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
 title title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 background_color color of plot background
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotPCA_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotPCA(gobject)
```

plotPCA_2D

plotPCA_2D

Description

Short wrapper for PCA visualization

Usage

```
plotPCA_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  default_save_name = "PCA_2D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	name of PCA
default_save_name	default save name of PCA plot
...	Arguments passed on to dimPlot2D
group_by	create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
group_by_subset	subset the group_by factor column
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
center_point_border_col	border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke	border stroke size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
edge_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
point_shape	point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size	size of point (cell)
point_alpha	transparency of point

point_border_col color of border around points
 point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
 title title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 background_color color of plot background
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotPCA_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotPCA_2D(gobject)
```

plotPCA_3D

plotPCA_3D

Description

Visualize cells according to 3D PCA dimension reduction

Usage

```

plotPCA_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  default_save_name = "PCA_3D",
  ...
)
```


Arguments

gobject giotto object
 dim_reduction_name name of PCA
 default_save_name default save name of PCA plot
 ... Arguments passed on to [dimPlot3D](#)
 dim1_to_use dimension to use on x-axis
 dim2_to_use dimension to use on y-axis
 dim3_to_use dimension to use on z-axis
 spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
 show_NN_network show underlying NN network
 nn_network_to_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
 network_name name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
 cell_color color for cells (see details)
 color_as_factor convert color column to factor
 cell_color_code named vector with colors
 select_cell_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
 select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
 show_other_cells display not selected cells
 other_cell_color color of not selected cells
 other_point_size size of not selected cells
 show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
 show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
 center_point_size size of center points
 label_size size of labels
 edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
 point_size size of point (cell)
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotPCA_3D(gobject)
```

plotRankSpatvsExpr *plotRankSpatvsExpr*

Description

Plots dotplot to compare ligand-receptor rankings from spatial and expression information

Usage

```
plotRankSpatvsExpr(
  gobject,
  combCC,
  expr_rnk_column = "LR_expr_rnk",
  spat_rnk_column = "LR_spat_rnk",
  midpoint = 10,
  size_range = c(0.01, 1.5),
  xlims = NULL,
  ylims = NULL,
  selected_ranks = c(1, 10, 20),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotRankSpatvsExpr"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
combCC	combined communication scores from combCCcom
expr_rnk_column	column with expression rank information to use
spat_rnk_column	column with spatial rank information to use
midpoint	midpoint of colors
size_range	size ranges of dotplot
xlims	x-limits, numerical vector of 2
ylims	y-limits, numerical vector of 2
selected_ranks	numerical vector, will be used to print out the percentage of top spatial ranks are recovered
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotting object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotRankSpatvsExpr(CPGscores)
```

plotRecovery	<i>plotRecovery</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

Plots recovery plot to compare ligand-receptor rankings from spatial and expression information

Usage

```
plotRecovery(
  gobject,
  combCC,
  expr_rnk_column = "exprPI_rnk",
  spat_rnk_column = "spatPI_rnk",
  ground_truth = c("spatial", "expression"),
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotRecovery"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>combCC</code>	combined communication scores from combCCcom
<code>expr_rnk_column</code>	column with expression rank information to use
<code>spat_rnk_column</code>	column with spatial rank information to use
<code>ground_truth</code>	what to consider as ground truth (default: spatial)
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return plotting object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotRecovery(CPGscores)
```

plotRecovery_sub	<i>plotRecovery_sub</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Plots recovery plot to compare ligand-receptor rankings from spatial and expression information

Usage

```
plotRecovery_sub(combCC, first_col = "LR_expr_rnk", second_col = "LR_spat_rnk")
```

Arguments

combCC	combined communication scores from combCCcom
first_col	first column to use
second_col	second column to use

Examples

```
plotRecovery_sub(CPGscores)
```

plotStatDelaunayNetwork	<i>plotStatDelaunayNetwork</i>
-------------------------	--------------------------------

Description

Plots network statistics for a Delaunay network..

Usage

```
plotStatDelaunayNetwork(  
  gobject,  
  method = c("deldir", "delaunayn_geometry", "RTriangle"),  
  dimensions = "all",  
  maximum_distance = "auto",  
  minimum_k = 0,  
  options = "Pp",  
  Y = TRUE,  
  j = TRUE,  
  S = 0,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "plotStatDelaunayNetwork",  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>method</code>	package to use to create a Delaunay network
<code>dimensions</code>	which spatial dimensions to use (maximum 2 dimensions)
<code>maximum_distance</code>	distance cutoff for Delaunay neighbors to consider
<code>minimum_k</code>	minimum neighbours if <code>maximum_distance</code> != NULL
<code>options</code>	(geometry) String containing extra control options for the underlying Qhull command; see the Qhull documentation (../doc/qhull/html/qdelaun.html) for the available options. (default = 'Pp', do not report precision problems)
<code>Y</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE prohibits the insertion of Steiner points on the mesh boundary.
<code>j</code>	(RTriangle) If TRUE jettisons vertices that are not part of the final triangulation from the output.
<code>S</code>	(RTriangle) Specifies the maximum number of added Steiner points.
<code>show_plot</code>	show plots
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	Other parameters

Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

Examples

```
plotStatDelaunayNetwork(gobject)
```

plotTSNE

plotTSNE

Description

Short wrapper for tSNE visualization

Usage

```
plotTSNE(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "tsne", default_save_name = "tSNE", ...)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
dim_reduction_name name of TSNE
default_save_name default save name of TSNE plot
... Arguments passed on to [dimPlot2D](#)
group_by create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
group_by_subset subset the group_by factor column
dim1_to_use dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor convert color column to factor
cell_color_code named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells display not selected cells
other_cell_color color of not selected cells
other_point_size size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size size of center points
center_point_border_col border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke border stroke size of center points
label_size size of labels
label_fontface font of labels
edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
point_shape point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size size of point (cell)
point_alpha transparency of point
point_border_col color of border around points
point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
title title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
show_legend show legend
legend_text size of legend text
legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
background_color color of plot background

axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotTSNE_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotTSNE(gobject)
```

plotTSNE_2D

plotTSNE_2D

Description

Short wrapper for tSNE visualization

Usage

```

plotTSNE_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "tsne",
  default_save_name = "tSNE_2D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
dim_reduction_name name of TSNE
default_save_name default save name of TSNE plot
... Arguments passed on to [dimPlot2D](#)
group_by create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
group_by_subset subset the group_by factor column
dim1_to_use dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor convert color column to factor
cell_color_code named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells display not selected cells
other_cell_color color of not selected cells
other_point_size size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size size of center points
center_point_border_col border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke border stroke size of center points
label_size size of labels
label_fontface font of labels
edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
point_shape point with border or not (border or no_border)
point_size size of point (cell)
point_alpha transparency of point
point_border_col color of border around points
point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
title title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
show_legend show legend
legend_text size of legend text
legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
background_color color of plot background

axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotTSNE_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotTSNE_2D(gobject)
```

plotTSNE_3D	<i>plotTSNE_3D</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```

plotTSNE_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "tsne",
  default_save_name = "TSNE_3D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
dim_reduction_name name of TSNE
default_save_name default save name of TSNE plot
... Arguments passed on to [dimPlot3D](#)
dim1_to_use dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use dimension to use on y-axis
dim3_to_use dimension to use on z-axis
spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name name of NN network to use, if **show_NN_network** = TRUE
cell_color color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor convert color column to factor
cell_color_code named vector with colors
select_cell_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on **cell_color** parameter
select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells display not selected cells
other_cell_color color of not selected cells
other_point_size size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size size of center points
label_size size of labels
edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
point_size size of point (cell)
show_plot show plot
return_plot return ggplot object
save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotTSNE_3D(gobject)
```

plotUMAP	<i>plotUMAP</i>
----------	-----------------

Description

Short wrapper for UMAP visualization

Usage

```
plotUMAP(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "umap", default_save_name = "UMAP", ...)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	name of UMAP
default_save_name	default save name of UMAP plot
...	Arguments passed on to dimPlot2D
group_by	create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
group_by_subset	subset the group_by factor column
dim1_to_use	dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use	dimension to use on y-axis
spat_enr_names	names of spatial enrichment results to include
show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
cell_color	color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor	convert color column to factor
cell_color_code	named vector with colors
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points

`center_point_border_col` border color of center points
`center_point_border_stroke` border stroke size of center points
`label_size` size of labels
`label_fontface` font of labels
`edge_alpha` column to use for alpha of the edges
`point_shape` point with border or not (border or no_border)
`point_size` size of point (cell)
`point_alpha` transparency of point
`point_border_col` color of border around points
`point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points
`title` title for plot, defaults to `cell_color` parameter
`show_legend` show legend
`legend_text` size of legend text
`legend_symbol_size` size of legend symbols
`background_color` color of plot background
`axis_text` size of axis text
`axis_title` size of axis title
`cow_n_col` cowplot param: how many columns
`cow_rel_h` cowplot param: relative height
`cow_rel_w` cowplot param: relative width
`cow_align` cowplot param: how to align
`show_plot` show plot
`return_plot` return ggplot object
`save_plot` directly save the plot [boolean]
`save_param` list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotUMAP_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotUMAP(gobject)
```

plotUMAP_2D

plotUMAP_2D

Description

Short wrapper for UMAP visualization

Usage

```
plotUMAP_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  default_save_name = "UMAP_2D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of UMAP
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name of UMAP plot
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed on to dimPlot2D
<code>group_by</code>	create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
<code>group_by_subset</code>	subset the <code>group_by</code> factor column
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters
<code>center_point_size</code>	size of center points

center_point_border_col border color of center points
 center_point_border_stroke border stroke size of center points
 label_size size of labels
 label_fontface font of labels
 edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
 point_shape point with border or not (border or no_border)
 point_size size of point (cell)
 point_alpha transparency of point
 point_border_col color of border around points
 point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
 title title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 background_color color of plot background
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotUMAP_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_3D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

```
plotUMAP_2D(gobject)
```

plotUMAP_3D

*plotUMAP_3D***Description**

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
plotUMAP_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  default_save_name = "UMAP_3D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
dim_reduction_name	name of UMAP
default_save_name	default save name of UMAP plot
...	Arguments passed on to dimPlot3D
	dim1_to_use dimension to use on x-axis
	dim2_to_use dimension to use on y-axis
	dim3_to_use dimension to use on z-axis
	spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
	show_NN_network show underlying NN network
	nn_network_to_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
	network_name name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
	cell_color color for cells (see details)
	color_as_factor convert color column to factor
	cell_color_code named vector with colors
	select_cell_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
	select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
	show_other_cells display not selected cells
	other_cell_color color of not selected cells
	other_point_size size of not selected cells
	show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
	show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
	center_point_size size of center points
	label_size size of labels
	edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
	point_size size of point (cell)
	show_plot show plot

return_plot return ggplot object
save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other reduced dimension visualizations: [dimPlot2D\(\)](#), [dimPlot3D\(\)](#), [dimPlot\(\)](#), [plotPCA_2D\(\)](#), [plotPCA_3D\(\)](#), [plotPCA\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_2D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE_3D\(\)](#), [plotTSNE\(\)](#), [plotUMAP_2D\(\)](#), [plotUMAP\(\)](#)

Examples

plotUMAP_3D(gobject)

print.giotto	<i>Prints giotto object.</i>
--------------	------------------------------

Description

Prints giotto object

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'giotto'  
print(object, nr_genes = 5, nr_cells = 5)
```

Arguments

object	giotto object
nr_genes	number of genes (rows) to print
nr_cells	number of cells (columns) to print

rankEnrich	<i>rankEnrich</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a rank based approach.

Usage

```
rankEnrich(...)
```

Arguments

...	Arguments passed on to runRankEnrich
<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>sign_matrix</code>	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse expression values from log scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code>
<code>output_enrichment</code>	how to return enrichment output
<code>p_value</code>	calculate p-values (boolean, default = FALSE)
<code>n_times</code>	number of permutations to calculate for <code>p_value</code>
<code>name</code>	to give to spatial enrichment results, default = rank
<code>return_gobject</code>	return giotto object

See Also

[runRankEnrich](#)

rankSpatialCorGroups	<i>rankSpatialCorGroups</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

Rank spatial correlated clusters according to correlation structure

Usage

```
rankSpatialCorGroups(
  gobject,
  spatCorObject,
  use_clus_name = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = FALSE,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "rankSpatialCorGroups"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatCorObject</code>	spatial correlation object
<code>use_clus_name</code>	name of clusters to visualize (from <code>clusterSpatialCorGenes()</code>)
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

data.table with positive (within group) and negative (outside group) scores

Examples

```
rankSpatialCorGroups(gobject)
```

<code>readExprMatrix</code>	<i>readExprMatrix</i>
-----------------------------	-----------------------

Description

Function to read an expression matrix into a sparse matrix.

Usage

```
readExprMatrix(path, cores = NA, transpose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

<code>path</code>	path to the expression matrix
<code>cores</code>	number of cores to use
<code>transpose</code>	transpose matrix

Details

The expression matrix needs to have both unique column names and row names

Value

sparse matrix

Examples

```
readExprMatrix()
```

readGiottoInstructions	
	<i>readGiottoInstructions</i>

Description

Retrieves the instruction associated with the provided parameter

Usage

```
readGiottoInstructions(giotto_instructions, param = NULL)
```

Arguments

giotto_instructions	giotto object or result from createGiottoInstructions()
param	parameter to retrieve

Value

specific parameter

Examples

```
readGiottoInstructions()
```

removeCellAnnotation	<i>removeCellAnnotation</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

removes cell annotation of giotto object

Usage

```
removeCellAnnotation(gobject, columns = NULL, return_gobject = TRUE)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
columns	names of columns to remove
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

if return_gobject = FALSE, it will return the cell metadata

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
removeCellAnnotation(gobject)
```

removeGeneAnnotation	<i>removeGeneAnnotation</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------

Description

removes gene annotation of giotto object

Usage

```
removeGeneAnnotation(gobject, columns = NULL, return_gobject = TRUE)
```

Arguments

- gobject giotto object
- columns names of columns to remove
- return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

if return_gobject = FALSE, it will return the gene metadata

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
removeGeneAnnotation(gobject)
```

replaceGiottoInstructions	<i>replaceGiottoInstructions</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------------

Description

Function to replace all instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
replaceGiottoInstructions(gobject, instructions = NULL)
```

Arguments

- gobject giotto object
- instructions new instructions (e.g. result from createGiottoInstructions)

Value

giotto object with replaces instructions

Examples

```
replaceGiottoInstructions()
```

runDWLSDeconv	<i>runDWLSDeconv</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Function to perform DWLS deconvolution based on single cell expression data

Usage

```
runDWLSDeconv(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized"),
  logbase = 2,
  cluster_column = "leiden_clus",
  sign_matrix,
  n_cell = 50,
  cutoff = 2,
  name = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
logbase	base used for log normalization
cluster_column	name of cluster column
sign_matrix	sig matrix for deconvolution
n_cell	number of cells per spot
cutoff	cut off (default = 2)
name	name to give to spatial deconvolution results, default = DWLS
return_gobject	return giotto object

Value

giotto object or deconvolution results

runHyperGeometricEnrich

runHyperGeometricEnrich

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a hypergeometric test.

Usage

```
runHyperGeometricEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  top_percentage = 5,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore"),
  p_value = FALSE,
  name = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
sign_matrix	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
expression_values	expression values to use
reverse_log_scale	reverse expression values from log scale
logbase	log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE
top_percentage	percentage of cells that will be considered to have gene expression with matrix binarization
output_enrichment	how to return enrichment output
p_value	calculate p-values (boolean, default = FALSE)
name	to give to spatial enrichment results, default = rank
return_gobject	return giotto object

Details

The enrichment score is calculated based on the p-value from the hypergeometric test, $-\log_{10}(p\text{-value})$.

Value

data.table with enrichment results

runPAGEEnrich	<i>runPAGEEnrich</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using PAGE.

Usage

```
runPAGEEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore"),
  p_value = FALSE,
  n_times = 1000,
  name = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>sign_matrix</code>	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse expression values from log scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code>
<code>output_enrichment</code>	how to return enrichment output
<code>p_value</code>	calculate p-values (boolean, default = FALSE)
<code>n_times</code>	number of permutations to calculate for <code>p_value</code>
<code>name</code>	to give to spatial enrichment results, default = PAGE
<code>return_gobject</code>	return giotto object

Details

`sign_matrix`: a binary matrix with genes as row names and cell-types as column names. Alternatively a list of signature genes can be provided to `makeSignMatrixPAGE`, which will create the matrix for you.

The enrichment Z score is calculated by using method (PAGE) from Kim SY et al., BMC bioinformatics, 2005 as $Z = ((Sm \sim \mu) * m^{(1/2)}) / \delta$. For each gene in each spot, μ is the fold change values versus the mean expression and δ is the standard deviation. Sm is the mean fold change value of a specific marker gene set and m is the size of a given marker gene set.

Value

data.table with enrichment results

See Also

[makeSignMatrixPAGE](#)

runPCA	<i>runPCA</i>
--------	---------------

Description

runs a Principal Component Analysis

Usage

```
runPCA(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),  
  name = "pca",  
  genes_to_use = "hvg",  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  center = F,  
  scale_unit = F,  
  ncp = 100,  
  method = c("irlba", "factominer"),  
  rev = FALSE,  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
reduction	cells or genes
name	arbitrary name for PCA run
genes_to_use	subset of genes to use for PCA
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
center	center data first (default = FALSE)
scale_unit	scale features before PCA (default = FALSE)
ncp	number of principal components to calculate
method	which implementation to use
rev	do a reverse PCA
verbose	verbosity of the function
...	additional parameters for PCA (see details)

Details

See [prcomp_irlba](#) and [PCA](#) for more information about other parameters.

- `genes_to_use = NULL`: will use all genes from the selected matrix
- `genes_to_use = <hvg name>`: can be used to select a column name of highly variable genes, created by (see [calculateHVG](#))
- `genes_to_use = c('geneA', 'geneB', ...)`: will use all manually provided genes

Value

giotto object with updated PCA dimension reduction

Examples

```
# 1. create giotto object
expr_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_expr.txt", package = 'Giotto')
loc_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_locs.txt", package = 'Giotto')
VC_small <- createGiottoObject(raw_exprs = expr_path, spatial_locs = loc_path)

# 2. normalize giotto
VC_small <- normalizeGiotto(gobject = VC_small, scalefactor = 6000)
VC_small <- addStatistics(gobject = VC_small)

# 3. dimension reduction
VC_small <- calculateHVG(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runPCA(gobject = VC_small)
plotPCA(VC_small)
```

runRankEnrich

runRankEnrich

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a rank based approach.

Usage

```
runRankEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore"),
  p_value = FALSE,
  n_times = 1000,
  name = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>sign_matrix</code>	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse expression values from log scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code>
<code>output_enrichment</code>	how to return enrichment output
<code>p_value</code>	calculate p-values (boolean, default = FALSE)
<code>n_times</code>	number of permutations to calculate for <code>p_value</code>
<code>name</code>	to give to spatial enrichment results, default = rank
<code>return_gobject</code>	return giotto object

Details

`sign_matrix`: a rank-fold matrix with genes as row names and cell-types as column names. Alternatively a scRNA-seq matrix and vector with clusters can be provided to `makeSignMatrixRank`, which will create the matrix for you.

First a new rank is calculated as $R = (R1 * R2)^{(1/2)}$, where $R1$ is the rank of fold-change for each gene in each spot and $R2$ is the rank of each marker in each cell type. The Rank-Biased Precision is then calculated as: $RBP = (1 - 0.99) * (0.99)^{(R - 1)}$ and the final enrichment score is then calculated as the sum of top 100 RBPs.

Value

data.table with enrichment results

See Also

[makeSignMatrixRank](#)

runSpatialDeconv

runSpatialDeconv

Description

Function to perform deconvolution based on single cell expression data

Usage

```
runSpatialDeconv(
  gobject,
  deconv_method = c("DWLS"),
  expression_values = c("normalized"),
  logbase = 2,
  cluster_column = "leiden_clus",
  sign_matrix,
  n_cell = 50,
  cutoff = 2,
  name = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
deconv_method	method to use for deconvolution
expression_values	expression values to use
logbase	base used for log normalization
cluster_column	name of cluster column
sign_matrix	signature matrix for deconvolution
n_cell	number of cells per spot
cutoff	cut off (default = 2)
name	name to give to spatial deconvolution results
return_gobject	return giotto object

Value

giotto object or deconvolution results

runSpatialEnrich	<i>runSpatialEnrich</i>
------------------	-------------------------

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using an enrichment test.

Usage

```
runSpatialEnrich(
  gobject,
  enrich_method = c("PAGE", "rank", "hypergeometric"),
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
```

```

    p_value = FALSE,
    n_times = 1000,
    top_percentage = 5,
    output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore"),
    name = NULL,
    return_gobject = TRUE
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>enrich_method</code>	method for gene signature enrichment calculation
<code>sign_matrix</code>	Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reverse_log_scale</code>	reverse expression values from log scale
<code>logbase</code>	log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code>
<code>p_value</code>	calculate p-value (default = FALSE)
<code>n_times</code>	(page/rank) number of permutation iterations to calculate p-value
<code>top_percentage</code>	(hyper) percentage of cells that will be considered to have gene expression with matrix binarization
<code>output_enrichment</code>	how to return enrichment output
<code>name</code>	to give to spatial enrichment results, default = PAGE
<code>return_gobject</code>	return giotto object

Details

For details see the individual functions:

- PAGE: [runPAGEEnrich](#)
- Rank: [runRankEnrich](#)
- Hypergeometric: [runHyperGeometricEnrich](#)

Value

Giotto object or enrichment results if `return_gobject = FALSE`

runtSNE

runtSNE

Description

run tSNE

Usage

```

runtSNE(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  name = "tsne",
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  dims = 2,
  perplexity = 30,
  theta = 0.5,
  do_PCA_first = F,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	use another dimension reduction set as input
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>name</code>	arbitrary name for tSNE run
<code>genes_to_use</code>	if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>dims</code>	tSNE param: number of dimensions to return
<code>perplexity</code>	tSNE param: perplexity
<code>theta</code>	tSNE param: theta
<code>do_PCA_first</code>	tSNE param: do PCA before tSNE (default = FALSE)
<code>set_seed</code>	use of seed
<code>seed_number</code>	seed number to use
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity of the function
<code>...</code>	additional tSNE parameters

Details

See [Rtsne](#) for more information about these and other parameters.

- Input for tSNE dimension reduction can be another dimension reduction (default = 'pca')
- To use gene expression as input set `dim_reduction_to_use = NULL`
- If `dim_reduction_to_use = NULL`, `genes_to_use` can be used to select a column name of highly variable genes (see [calculateHVG](#)) or simply provide a vector of genes
- multiple tSNE results can be stored by changing the *name* of the analysis

Value

giotto object with updated tSNE dimension reduction

Examples

```
# 1. create giotto object
expr_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_expr.txt", package = 'Giotto')
loc_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_locs.txt", package = 'Giotto')
VC_small <- createGiottoObject(raw_exprs = expr_path, spatial_locs = loc_path)

# 2. normalize giotto
VC_small <- normalizeGiotto(gobject = VC_small, scalefactor = 6000)
VC_small <- addStatistics(gobject = VC_small)

# 3. dimension reduction
VC_small <- calculateHVG(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runPCA(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runTSNE(VC_small, dimensions_to_use = 1:5, n_threads = 2)
plotTSNE(gobject = VC_small)
```

runUMAP

runUMAP

Description

run UMAP

Usage

```
runUMAP(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  name = "umap",
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  n_neighbors = 40,
```

```

    n_components = 2,
    n_epochs = 400,
    min_dist = 0.01,
    n_threads = 1,
    spread = 5,
    set_seed = T,
    seed_number = 1234,
    verbose = T,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	use another dimension reduction set as input
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	name of dimension reduction set to use
<code>dimensions_to_use</code>	number of dimensions to use as input
<code>name</code>	arbitrary name for UMAP run
<code>genes_to_use</code>	if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use
<code>return_gobject</code>	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
<code>n_neighbors</code>	UMAP param: number of neighbors
<code>n_components</code>	UMAP param: number of components
<code>n_epochs</code>	UMAP param: number of epochs
<code>min_dist</code>	UMAP param: minimum distance
<code>n_threads</code>	UMAP param: threads to use
<code>spread</code>	UMAP param: spread
<code>set_seed</code>	use of seed
<code>seed_number</code>	seed number to use
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity of function
<code>...</code>	additional UMAP parameters

Details

See [umap](#) for more information about these and other parameters.

- Input for UMAP dimension reduction can be another dimension reduction (default = 'pca')
- To use gene expression as input set `dim_reduction_to_use = NULL`
- If `dim_reduction_to_use = NULL`, `genes_to_use` can be used to select a column name of highly variable genes (see [calculateHVG](#)) or simply provide a vector of genes
- multiple UMAP results can be stored by changing the *name* of the analysis

Value

giotto object with updated UMAP dimension reduction

Examples

```
# 1. create giotto object
expr_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_expr.txt", package = 'Giotto')
loc_path = system.file("extdata", "seqfish_field_locs.txt", package = 'Giotto')
VC_small <- createGiottoObject(raw_exprs = expr_path, spatial_locs = loc_path)

# 2. normalize giotto
VC_small <- normalizeGiotto(gobject = VC_small, scalefactor = 6000)
VC_small <- addStatistics(gobject = VC_small)

# 3. dimension reduction
VC_small <- calculateHVG(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runPCA(gobject = VC_small)
VC_small <- runUMAP(VC_small, dimensions_to_use = 1:5, n_threads = 2)
plotUMAP(gobject = VC_small)
```

screePlot

screePlot

Description

identify significant principal components (PCs) using an screeplot (a.k.a. elbowplot)

Usage

```
screePlot(
  gobject,
  name = "pca",
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  method = c("irlba", "factominer"),
  rev = FALSE,
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  center = F,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 100,
  ylim = c(0, 20),
  verbose = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "screePlot",
  ...
)
```


Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of PCA object if available
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>method</code>	which implementation to use
<code>rev</code>	do a reverse PCA
<code>genes_to_use</code>	subset of genes to use for PCA
<code>center</code>	center data before PCA
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features before PCA
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>ylim</code>	y-axis limits on scree plot
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code>
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>
<code>...</code>	additional arguments to <code>pca</code> function, see runPCA

Details

Screeplot works by plotting the explained variance of each individual PC in a barplot allowing you to identify which PC provides a significant contribution (a.k.a 'elbow method').

Screeplot will use an available `pca` object, based on the parameter 'name', or it will create it if it's not available (see [runPCA](#))

Value

ggplot object for scree method

Examples

```
screePlot(gobject)
```

selectPatternGenes	<i>selectPatternGenes</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Select genes correlated with spatial patterns

Usage

```
selectPatternGenes(
  spatPatObj,
  dimensions = 1:5,
  top_pos_genes = 10,
  top_neg_genes = 10,
  min_pos_cor = 0.5,
  min_neg_cor = -0.5,
  return_top_selection = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
dimensions	dimensions to identify correlated genes for.
top_pos_genes	Top positively correlated genes.
top_neg_genes	Top negatively correlated genes.
min_pos_cor	Minimum positive correlation score to include a gene.
min_neg_cor	Minimum negative correlation score to include a gene.
return_top_selection	only return selection based on correlation criteria (boolean)

Details

Description.

Value

Data.table with genes associated with selected dimension (PC).

Examples

```
selectPatternGenes(gobject)
```

show,giotto-method	<i>show method for giotto class</i>
--------------------	-------------------------------------

Description

show method for giotto class

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'giotto'
show(object)
```

Arguments

object	giotto object
--------	---------------

showClusterDendrogram	<i>showClusterDendrogram</i>
-----------------------	------------------------------

Description

Creates dendrogram for selected clusters.

Usage

```
showClusterDendrogram(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  h = NULL,
  h_color = "red",
  rotate = FALSE,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showClusterDendrogram",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cor	correlation score to calculate distance

distance	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
h	height of horizontal lines to plot
h_color	color of horizontal lines
rotate	rotate dendrogram 90 degrees
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
...	additional parameters for ggdendrogram()

Details

Expression correlation dendrogram for selected clusters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showClusterDendrogram(gobject)
```

showClusterHeatmap	<i>showClusterHeatmap</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Creates heatmap based on identified clusters

Usage

```
showClusterHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = "all",
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showClusterHeatmap",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	vector of genes to use, default to 'all'
<code>cluster_column</code>	name of column to use for clusters
<code>cor</code>	correlation score to calculate distance
<code>distance</code>	distance method to use for hierarchical clustering
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
<code>...</code>	additional parameters for the Heatmap function from ComplexHeatmap

Details

Correlation heatmap of selected clusters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showClusterHeatmap(gobject)
```

```
showGiottoImageNames  showGiottoImageNames
```

Description

Prints the available giotto images that are attached to the Giotto object

Usage

```
showGiottoImageNames(gobject, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	a giotto object
<code>verbose</code>	verbosity of function

Value

a vector of giotto image names attached to the giotto object

Examples

```
showGiottoImageNames(gobject)
```

showGiottoInstructions	<i>showGiottoInstructions</i>
------------------------	-------------------------------

Description

Function to display all instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
showGiottoInstructions(gobject)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
---------	---------------

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
showGiottoInstructions()
```

showGrids	<i>showGrids</i>
-----------	------------------

Description

Prints the available spatial grids that are attached to the Giotto object

Usage

```
showGrids(gobject, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

gobject	a giotto object
verbose	verbosity of function#'

Value

vector

Examples

```
showGrids()
```

showNetworks	<i>showNetworks</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

Prints the available spatial networks that are attached to the Giotto object

Usage

```
showNetworks(gobject, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

gobject	a giotto object
verbose	verbosity of function#'

Value

vector

Examples

```
showNetworks()
```

showPattern	<i>showPattern</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

show patterns for 2D spatial data

Usage

```
showPattern(gobject, spatPatObj, ...)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
...	Arguments passed on to showPattern2D
dimension	dimension to plot
trim	Trim ends of the PC values.
background_color	background color for plot
grid_border_color	color for grid
show_legend	show legend of ggplot
point_size	size of points
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object

save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name
in save_param

Value

ggplot

See Also

[showPattern2D](#)

Examples

showPattern(gobject)

showPattern2D	<i>showPattern2D</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

show patterns for 2D spatial data

Usage

```
showPattern2D(  
  gobject,  
  spatPatObj,  
  dimension = 1,  
  trim = c(0.02, 0.98),  
  background_color = "white",  
  grid_border_color = "grey",  
  show_legend = T,  
  point_size = 1,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "showPattern2D"  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
spatPatObj	Output from detectSpatialPatterns
dimension	dimension to plot
trim	Trim ends of the PC values.
background_color	background color for plot

grid_border_color	color for grid
show_legend	show legend of ggplot
point_size	size of points
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showPattern2D(gobject)
```

showPattern3D

showPattern3D

Description

show patterns for 3D spatial data

Usage

```
showPattern3D(
  gobject,
  spatPatObj,
  dimension = 1,
  trim = c(0.02, 0.98),
  background_color = "white",
  grid_border_color = "grey",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size = 1,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showPattern3D"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatPatObj</code>	Output from <code>detectSpatialPatterns</code>
<code>dimension</code>	dimension to plot
<code>trim</code>	Trim ends of the PC values.
<code>background_color</code>	background color for plot
<code>grid_border_color</code>	color for grid
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend of plot
<code>point_size</code>	adjust the point size
<code>axis_scale</code>	scale the axis
<code>custom_ratio</code>	customize the scale of the axis
<code>x_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>x_axis</code>
<code>y_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>y_axis</code>
<code>z_ticks</code>	the tick number of <code>z_axis</code>
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return plot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

plotly

Examples

```
showPattern3D(gobject)
```

<code>showPatternGenes</code>	<i>showPatternGenes</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------

Description

show genes correlated with spatial patterns

Usage

```
showPatternGenes(  
  gobject,  
  spatPatObj,  
  dimension = 1,  
  top_pos_genes = 5,  
  top_neg_genes = 5,  
  point_size = 1,  
  return_DT = FALSE,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "showPatternGenes"  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>spatPatObj</code>	Output from <code>detectSpatialPatterns</code>
<code>dimension</code>	dimension to plot genes for.
<code>top_pos_genes</code>	Top positively correlated genes.
<code>top_neg_genes</code>	Top negatively correlated genes.
<code>point_size</code>	size of points
<code>return_DT</code>	if TRUE, it will return the data.table used to generate the plots
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showPatternGenes(gobject)
```

showProcessingSteps	<i>showProcessingSteps</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

shows the sequential processing steps that were performed in a summarized format

Usage

```
showProcessingSteps(gobject)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
---------	---------------

Value

list of processing steps and names

Examples

```
showProcessingSteps(gobject)
```

showSaveParameters	<i>showSaveParameters</i>
--------------------	---------------------------

Description

Description of Giotto saving options, links to [all_plots_save_function](#)

Usage

```
showSaveParameters()
```

Value

Instruction on how to use the automatic plot saving options within Giotto

Examples

```
showSaveParameters()
```

showSpatialCorGenes	<i>showSpatialCorGenes</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

Description

Shows and filters spatially correlated genes

Usage

```
showSpatialCorGenes(
  spatCorObject,
  use_clus_name = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  genes = NULL,
  min_spat_cor = 0.5,
  min_expr_cor = NULL,
  min_cor_diff = NULL,
  min_rank_diff = NULL,
  show_top_genes = NULL
)
```

Arguments

spatCorObject	spatial correlation object
use_clus_name	cluster information to show
selected_clusters	subset of clusters to show
genes	subset of genes to show
min_spat_cor	filter on minimum spatial correlation
min_expr_cor	filter on minimum single-cell expression correlation
min_cor_diff	filter on minimum correlation difference (spatial vs expression)
min_rank_diff	filter on minimum correlation rank difference (spatial vs expression)
show_top_genes	show top genes per gene

Value

data.table with filtered information

Examples

```
showSpatialCorGenes(gobject)
```

signPCA

*signPCA***Description**

identify significant principal components (PCs)

Usage

```
signPCA(
  gobject,
  name = "pca",
  method = c("screeplot", "jackstraw"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  pca_method = c("irlba", "factominer"),
  rev = FALSE,
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  center = T,
  scale_unit = T,
  ncp = 50,
  scree_ylim = c(0, 10),
  jack_iter = 10,
  jack_threshold = 0.01,
  jack_ylim = c(0, 1),
  verbose = TRUE,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "signPCA"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>name</code>	name of PCA object if available
<code>method</code>	method to use to identify significant PCs
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>reduction</code>	cells or genes
<code>pca_method</code>	which implementation to use
<code>rev</code>	do a reverse PCA
<code>genes_to_use</code>	subset of genes to use for PCA
<code>center</code>	center data before PCA
<code>scale_unit</code>	scale features before PCA
<code>ncp</code>	number of principal components to calculate
<code>scree_ylim</code>	y-axis limits on scree plot

jack_iter	number of iterations for jackstraw
jack_threshold	p-value threshold to call a PC significant
jack_ylim	y-axis limits on jackstraw plot
verbose	verbosity
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Two different methods can be used to assess the number of relevant or significant principal components (PC's).

1. Screeplot works by plotting the explained variance of each individual PC in a barplot allowing you to identify which PC provides a significant contribution (a.k.a. 'elbow method').
2. The Jackstraw method uses the [permutationPA](#) function. By systematically permuting genes it identifies robust, and thus significant, PCs.

Value

ggplot object for scree method and maxtrix of p-values for jackstraw

Examples

```
signPCA(gobject)
```

silhouetteRank	<i>silhouetteRank</i>
----------------	-----------------------

Description

Previously: calculate_spatial_genes_python. This method computes a silhouette score per gene based on the spatial distribution of two partitions of cells (expressed L1, and non-expressed L0). Here, rather than L2 Euclidean norm, it uses a rank-transformed, exponentially weighted function to represent the local physical distance between two cells.

Usage

```
silhouetteRank(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  metric = "euclidean",
  subset_genes = NULL,
  rbp_p = 0.95,
  examine_top = 0.3,
  python_path = NULL
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	expression values to use
<code>metric</code>	distance metric to use
<code>subset_genes</code>	only run on this subset of genes
<code>rbp_p</code>	fractional binarization threshold
<code>examine_top</code>	top fraction to evaluate with silhouette
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required

Value

data.table with spatial scores

Examples

```
silhouetteRank(gobject)
```

<code>spatCellCellcom</code>	<i>spatCellCellcom</i>
------------------------------	------------------------

Description

Spatial Cell-Cell communication scores based on spatial expression of interacting cells

Usage

```
spatCellCellcom(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",  
  cluster_column = "cell_types",  
  random_iter = 1000,  
  gene_set_1,  
  gene_set_2,  
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,  
  min_observations = 2,  
  detailed = FALSE,  
  adjust_method = c("fdr", "bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY",  
    "none"),  
  adjust_target = c("genes", "cells"),  
  do_parallel = TRUE,  
  cores = NA,  
  verbose = c("a little", "a lot", "none")  
)
```


Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	spatial network to use for identifying interacting cells
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell type information
<code>random_iter</code>	number of iterations
<code>gene_set_1</code>	first specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>gene_set_2</code>	second specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>log2FC_addendum</code>	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
<code>min_observations</code>	minimum number of interactions needed to be considered
<code>detailed</code>	provide more detailed information (random variance and z-score)
<code>adjust_method</code>	which method to adjust p-values
<code>adjust_target</code>	adjust multiple hypotheses at the cell or gene level
<code>do_parallel</code>	run calculations in parallel with mclapply
<code>cores</code>	number of cores to use if <code>do_parallel = TRUE</code>
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Details

Statistical framework to identify if pairs of genes (such as ligand-receptor combinations) are expressed at higher levels than expected based on a reshuffled null distribution of gene expression values in cells that are spatially in proximity to eachother..

- `LR_comb`: Pair of ligand and receptor
- `lig_cell_type`: cell type to assess expression level of ligand
- `lig_expr`: average expression of ligand in `lig_cell_type`
- `ligand`: ligand name
- `rec_cell_type`: cell type to assess expression level of receptor
- `rec_expr`: average expression of receptor in `rec_cell_type`
- `receptor`: receptor name
- `LR_expr`: combined average ligand and receptor expression
- `lig_nr`: total number of cells from `lig_cell_type` that spatially interact with cells from `rec_cell_type`
- `rec_nr`: total number of cells from `rec_cell_type` that spatially interact with cells from `lig_cell_type`
- `rand_expr`: average combined ligand and receptor expression from random spatial permutations
- `av_diff`: average difference between `LR_expr` and `rand_expr` over all random spatial permutations
- `sd_diff`: (optional) standard deviation of the difference between `LR_expr` and `rand_expr` over all random spatial permutations
- `z_score`: (optional) z-score
- `log2fc`: log2 fold-change ($LR_expr / rand_expr$)
- `pvalue`: p-value
- `LR_cell_comb`: cell type pair combination
- `p.adj`: adjusted p-value
- `PI`: significanc score: $log2fc * -log10(p.adj)$

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on spatial interaction

Examples

```
spatCellCellcom(gobject)
```

spatCellPlot	<i>spatCellPlot</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatCellPlot(...)
```

Arguments

```
...           Arguments passed on to spatCellPlot2D
gobject      giotto object
show_image   show a tissue background image
gimage       a giotto image
image_name   name of a giotto image
sdimx        x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
sdimy        y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
cell_annotation_values numeric cell annotation columns
cell_color_gradient vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
point_shape  shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
point_size   size of point (cell)
point_alpha  transparency of spatial points
point_border_col color of border around points
point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size size of center points
center_point_border_col border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke border stroke size of center points
label_size   size of labels
label_fontface font of labels
```

show_network show underlying spatial network
 spatial_network_name name of spatial network to use
 network_color color of spatial network
 network_alpha alpha of spatial network
 show_grid show spatial grid
 spatial_grid_name name of spatial grid to use
 grid_color color of spatial grid
 show_other_cells display not selected cells
 other_cell_color color of not selected cells
 other_point_size point size of not selected cells
 other_cells_alpha alpha of not selected cells
 coord_fix_ratio fix ratio between x and y-axis
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 background_color color of plot background
 vor_border_color border color for voronoi plot
 vor_max_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
 vor_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name
 in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other spatial cell annotation visualizations: [spatCellPlot2D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatCellPlot(gobject)
```

spatCellPlot2D

spatCellPlot2D

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatCellPlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
  point_size = 3,
  point_alpha = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = F,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  show_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  show_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  grid_color = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
  coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
  show_legend = T,
  legend_text = 8,
  legend_symbol_size = 1,
  background_color = "white",
```

```

    vor_border_color = "white",
    vor_max_radius = 200,
    vor_alpha = 1,
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatCellPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>point_shape</code>	shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_alpha</code>	transparency of spatial points
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_cluster_center</code>	plot center of selected clusters
<code>show_center_label</code>	plot label of selected clusters

center_point_size	size of center points
center_point_border_col	border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke	border stroke size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
show_network	show underlying spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_color	color of spatial network
network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	point size of not selected cells
other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected cells
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
background_color	color of plot background
vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object

save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other spatial cell annotation visualizations: [spatCellPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

spatCellPlot2D(gobject)

spatDimCellPlot	<i>spatDimCellPlot</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

Visualize numerical features of cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in 2D

Usage

spatDimCellPlot(...)

Arguments

... Arguments passed on to [spatDimCellPlot2D](#)
gobject giotto object
show_image show a tissue background image
gimage a giotto image
image_name name of a giotto image
plot_alignment direction to align plot
spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
cell_annotation_values numeric cell annotation columns
dim_reduction_to_use dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use dimension to use on y-axis
sdimx = spatial dimension to use on x-axis
sdimy = spatial dimension to use on y-axis

`cell_color_gradient` vector with 3 colors for numeric data
`gradient_midpoint` midpoint for color gradient
`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits
`select_cell_groups` select subset of cells/clusters based on `cell_color` parameter
`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs
`dim_point_shape` dim reduction points with border or not (border or no_border)
`dim_point_size` size of points in dim. reduction space
`dim_point_alpha` transparency of dim. reduction points
`dim_point_border_col` border color of points in dim. reduction space
`dim_point_border_stroke` border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
`spat_point_shape` shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
`spat_point_size` size of spatial points
`spat_point_alpha` transparency of spatial points
`spat_point_border_col` border color of spatial points
`spat_point_border_stroke` border stroke of spatial points
`dim_show_cluster_center` show the center of each cluster
`dim_show_center_label` provide a label for each cluster
`dim_center_point_size` size of the center point
`dim_center_point_border_col` border color of center point
`dim_center_point_border_stroke` stroke size of center point
`dim_label_size` size of the center label
`dim_label_fontface` font of the center label
`spat_show_cluster_center` show the center of each cluster
`spat_show_center_label` provide a label for each cluster
`spat_center_point_size` size of the spatial center points
`spat_center_point_border_col` border color of the spatial center points
`spat_center_point_border_stroke` stroke size of the spatial center points
`spat_label_size` size of the center label
`spat_label_fontface` font of the center label
`show_NN_network` show underlying NN network
`nn_network_to_use` type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
`nn_network_name` name of NN network to use, if `show_NN_network = TRUE`
`dim_edge_alpha` column to use for alpha of the edges
`spat_show_network` show spatial network
`spatial_network_name` name of spatial network to use
`spat_network_color` color of spatial network
`spat_network_alpha` alpha of spatial network
`spat_show_grid` show spatial grid
`spatial_grid_name` name of spatial grid to use
`spat_grid_color` color of spatial grid
`show_other_cells` display not selected cells
`other_cell_color` color of not selected cells
`dim_other_point_size` size of not selected dim cells
`spat_other_point_size` size of not selected spat cells
`spat_other_cells_alpha` alpha of not selected spat cells

coord_fix_ratio ratio for coordinates
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 dim_background_color background color of points in dim. reduction space
 spat_background_color background color of spatial points
 vor_border_color border color for voronoi plot
 vor_max_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
 vor_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other spatial and dimension reduction cell annotation visualizations: [spatDimCellPlot2D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatDimCellPlot(gobject)
```

spatDimCellPlot2D	<i>spatDimCellPlot2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize numerical features of cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in 2D

Usage

```

spatDimCellPlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  dim_point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
  dim_point_size = 1,
  dim_point_alpha = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  spat_point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
  spat_point_size = 1,
  spat_point_alpha = 1,
  spat_point_border_col = "black",
  spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_show_cluster_center = F,
  dim_show_center_label = T,
  dim_center_point_size = 4,
  dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_label_size = 4,
  dim_label_fontface = "bold",
  spat_show_cluster_center = F,
  spat_show_center_label = F,
  spat_center_point_size = 4,
  spat_center_point_border_col = "black",
  spat_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  spat_label_size = 4,
  spat_label_fontface = "bold",
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  nn_network_name = "sNN.pca",
  dim_edge_alpha = 0.5,
  spat_show_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  spat_network_color = "red",
  spat_network_alpha = 0.5,

```

```

    spat_show_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spat_grid_color = "green",
    show_other_cells = TRUE,
    other_cell_color = "grey",
    dim_other_point_size = 0.5,
    spat_other_point_size = 0.5,
    spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
    show_legend = T,
    legend_text = 8,
    legend_symbol_size = 1,
    dim_background_color = "white",
    spat_background_color = "white",
    vor_border_color = "white",
    vor_max_radius = 200,
    vor_alpha = 1,
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimCellPlot2D"
  )

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_annotation_values</code>	numeric cell annotation columns
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data

gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups	select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
dim_point_shape	dim reduction points with border or not (border or no_border)
dim_point_size	size of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_alpha	transparency of dim. reduction points
dim_point_border_col	border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke	border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_shape	shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
spat_point_size	size of spatial points
spat_point_alpha	transparency of spatial points
spat_point_border_col	border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke	border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center	show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label	provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size	size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col	border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke	stroke size of center point
dim_label_size	size of the center label
dim_label_fontface	font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center	show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label	provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size	size of the spatial center points
spat_center_point_border_col	border color of the spatial center points

```

    spat_center_point_border_stroke
        stroke size of the spatial center points
    spat_label_size
        size of the center label
    spat_label_fontface
        font of the center label
    show_NN_network
        show underlying NN network
    nn_network_to_use
        type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
    nn_network_name
        name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
    dim_edge_alpha
        column to use for alpha of the edges
    spat_show_network
        show spatial network
    spatial_network_name
        name of spatial network to use
    spat_network_color
        color of spatial network
    spat_network_alpha
        alpha of spatial network
    spat_show_grid
        show spatial grid
    spatial_grid_name
        name of spatial grid to use
    spat_grid_color
        color of spatial grid
    show_other_cells
        display not selected cells
    other_cell_color
        color of not selected cells
    dim_other_point_size
        size of not selected dim cells
    spat_other_point_size
        size of not selected spat cells
    spat_other_cells_alpha
        alpha of not selected spat cells
    show_legend
        show legend
    legend_text
        size of legend text
    legend_symbol_size
        size of legend symbols
    dim_background_color
        background color of points in dim. reduction space
    spat_background_color
        background color of spatial points
    vor_border_color
        border color for voronoi plot
    vor_max_radius
        maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'

```

vor_alpha	transparancy of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
coord_fix_ratio	ratio for coordinates
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other spatial and dimension reduction cell annotation visualizations: [spatDimCellPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatDimCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

spatDimGenePlot	<i>spatDimGenePlot</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot(...)
```

Arguments

... Arguments passed on to [spatDimGenePlot2D](#)

`gobject` giotto object

`show_image` show a tissue background image

`gimage` a giotto image

`image_name` name of a giotto image

`expression_values` gene expression values to use

`plot_alignment` direction to align plot

`genes` genes to show

`dim_reduction_to_use` dimension reduction to use

`dim_reduction_name` dimension reduction name

`dim1_to_use` dimension to use on x-axis

`dim2_to_use` dimension to use on y-axis

`dim_point_shape` dim reduction points with border or not (border or no_border)

`dim_point_size` dim reduction plot: point size

`dim_point_alpha` transparency of dim. reduction points

`dim_point_border_col` color of border around points

`dim_point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points

`show_NN_network` show underlying NN network

`show_spatial_network` show underlying spatial network

`nn_network_to_use` type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)

`network_name` name of NN network to use, if `show_NN_network = TRUE`

`dim_network_color` color of NN network

`dim_edge_alpha` dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges

`scale_alpha_with_expression` scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter

`sdimx` spatial x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')

`sdimy` spatial y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')

`spatial_network_name` name of spatial network to use

`spatial_network_color` color of spatial network

`show_spatial_grid` show spatial grid

`grid_color` color of spatial grid

`spatial_grid_name` name of spatial grid to use

`spat_point_shape` spatial points with border or not (border or no_border)

`spat_point_size` spatial plot: point size

`spat_point_alpha` transparency of spatial points

`spat_point_border_col` color of border around points

`spat_point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points

`spat_edge_alpha` edge alpha

`cell_color_gradient` vector with 3 colors for numeric data

`gradient_midpoint` midpoint for color gradient

`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits

`show_legend` show legend

`legend_text` size of legend text

`dim_background_color` color of plot background for dimension plot

`spat_background_color` color of plot background for spatial plot

vor_border_color border color for voronoi plot
 vor_max_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
 vor_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plots
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimGenePlot3D](#)

Other spatial and dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [spatDimGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [spatDimGenePlot3D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot(gobject)
```

spatDimGenePlot2D	<i>spatDimGenePlot2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```

spatDimGenePlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),

```



```

genes,
dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
dim_reduction_name = "umap",
dim1_to_use = 1,
dim2_to_use = 2,
dim_point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
dim_point_size = 1,
dim_point_alpha = 1,
dim_point_border_col = "black",
dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
show_NN_network = F,
show_spatial_network = F,
dim_network_color = "gray",
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
dim_edge_alpha = NULL,
scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
sdmx = "sdmx",
sdimy = "sdimy",
spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
spatial_network_color = NULL,
show_spatial_grid = F,
grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spat_point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
spat_point_size = 1,
spat_point_alpha = 1,
spat_point_border_col = "black",
spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_edge_alpha = NULL,
cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
gradient_midpoint = NULL,
gradient_limits = NULL,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
legend_text = 8,
dim_background_color = "white",
spat_background_color = "white",
vor_border_color = "white",
vor_max_radius = 200,
vor_alpha = 1,
axis_text = 8,
axis_title = 8,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim_point_shape</code>	dim reduction points with border or not (border or no_border)
<code>dim_point_size</code>	dim reduction plot: point size
<code>dim_point_alpha</code>	transparency of dim. reduction points
<code>dim_point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>dim_point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>show_spatial_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>dim_network_color</code>	color of NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>dim_edge_alpha</code>	dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>sdimx</code>	spatial x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	spatial y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>spatial_network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>show_spatial_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid

spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spat_point_shape	spatial points with border or not (border or no_border)
spat_point_size	spatial plot: point size
spat_point_alpha	transparency of spatial points
spat_point_border_col	color of border around points
spat_point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
spat_edge_alpha	edge alpha
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
dim_background_color	color of plot background for dimension plot
spat_background_color	color of plot background for spatial plot
vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimGenePlot3D](#)

Other spatial and dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [spatDimGenePlot3D\(\)](#), [spatDimGenePlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

spatDimGenePlot3D	<i>spatDimGenePlot3D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdinx = "sdinx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1.5,
  show_NN_network = FALSE,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  nn_network_color = "lightgrey",
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_high_color = "red",
  dim_point_size = 3,
```

```

show_spatial_network = FALSE,
spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
spatial_network_color = "lightgray",
spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_grid = FALSE,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_point_size = 3,
legend_text_size = 12,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot3D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimz</code>	spatial dimension to use on z-axis
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to select groups
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells

show_NN_network	show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
nn_network_color	color of NN network
nn_network_alpha	alpha of NN network
network_name	name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
label_size	size of labels
genes_low_color	color for low expression levels
genes_mid_color	color for medium expression levels
genes_high_color	color for high expression levels
dim_point_size	dim reduction plot: point size
show_spatial_network	show spatial network (boolean)
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spatial_network_color	color of spatial network
spatial_network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_spatial_grid	show spatial grid (boolean)
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color	color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_alpha	alpha of spatial grid
spatial_point_size	spatial plot: point size
legend_text_size	size of legend
axis_scale	the way to scale the axis
custom_ratio	customize the scale of the plot
x_ticks	set the number of ticks on the x-axis
y_ticks	set the number of ticks on the y-axis
z_ticks	set the number of ticks on the z-axis
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return plotly object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other spatial and dimension reduction gene expression visualizations: [spatDimGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [spatDimGenePlot\(\)](#)

spatDimPlot	<i>spatDimPlot</i>
-------------	--------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates 2D

Usage

```
spatDimPlot(...)
```

Arguments

... Arguments passed on to [spatDimPlot2D](#)

`gobject` giotto object

`show_image` show a tissue background image

`gimage` a giotto image

`image_name` name of a giotto image

`plot_alignment` direction to align plot

`dim_reduction_to_use` dimension reduction to use

`dim_reduction_name` dimension reduction name

`dim1_to_use` dimension to use on x-axis

`dim2_to_use` dimension to use on y-axis

`sdimx` = spatial dimension to use on x-axis

`sdimy` = spatial dimension to use on y-axis

`spat_enr_names` names of spatial enrichment results to include

`cell_color` color for cells (see details)

`color_as_factor` convert color column to factor

`cell_color_code` named vector with colors

`cell_color_gradient` vector with 3 colors for numeric data

`gradient_midpoint` midpoint for color gradient

`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits

`select_cell_groups` select subset of cells/clusters based on `cell_color` parameter

`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs

`dim_point_shape` point with border or not (border or `no_border`)

dim_point_size size of points in dim. reduction space
 dim_point_alpha transparency of point in dim. reduction space
 dim_point_border_col border color of points in dim. reduction space
 dim_point_border_stroke border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
 spat_point_shape shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
 spat_point_size size of spatial points
 spat_point_alpha transparency of spatial points
 spat_point_border_col border color of spatial points
 spat_point_border_stroke border stroke of spatial points
 dim_show_cluster_center show the center of each cluster
 dim_show_center_label provide a label for each cluster
 dim_center_point_size size of the center point
 dim_center_point_border_col border color of center point
 dim_center_point_border_stroke stroke size of center point
 dim_label_size size of the center label
 dim_label_fontface font of the center label
 spat_show_cluster_center show the center of each cluster
 spat_show_center_label provide a label for each cluster
 spat_center_point_size size of the center point
 spat_center_point_border_col border color of spatial center points
 spat_center_point_border_stroke border strike size of spatial center points
 spat_label_size size of the center label
 spat_label_fontface font of the center label
 show_NN_network show underlying NN network
 nn_network_to_use type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
 network_name name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
 nn_network_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
 show_spatial_network show spatial network
 spat_network_name name of spatial network to use
 spat_network_color color of spatial network
 spat_network_alpha alpha of spatial network
 show_spatial_grid show spatial grid
 spat_grid_name name of spatial grid to use
 spat_grid_color color of spatial grid
 show_other_cells display not selected cells
 other_cell_color color of not selected cells
 dim_other_point_size size of not selected dim cells
 spat_other_point_size size of not selected spat cells
 spat_other_cells_alpha alpha of not selected spat cells
 dim_show_legend show legend of dimension reduction plot
 spat_show_legend show legend of spatial plot
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 dim_background_color background color of points in dim. reduction space
 spat_background_color background color of spatial points

vor_border_color border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text size of axis text
axis_title size of axis title
show_plot show plot
return_plot return ggplot object
save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimPlot2D](#) and [spatDimPlot3D](#) for 3D visualization.
Other spatial and dimension reduction visualizations: [spatDimPlot2D\(\)](#), [spatDimPlot3D\(\)](#)

Examples

spatDimPlot(gobject)

spatDimPlot2D	<i>spatDimPlot2D</i>
---------------	----------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates 2D

Usage

```
spatDimPlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  show_image = F,  
  gimage = NULL,  
  image_name = "image",  
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",
```

```

spat_enr_names = NULL,
cell_color = NULL,
color_as_factor = T,
cell_color_code = NULL,
cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
gradient_midpoint = NULL,
gradient_limits = NULL,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
dim_point_shape = c("border", "no_border"),
dim_point_size = 1,
dim_point_alpha = 1,
dim_point_border_col = "black",
dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
spat_point_size = 1,
spat_point_alpha = 1,
spat_point_border_col = "black",
spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
dim_show_cluster_center = F,
dim_show_center_label = T,
dim_center_point_size = 4,
dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
dim_label_size = 4,
dim_label_fontface = "bold",
spat_show_cluster_center = F,
spat_show_center_label = F,
spat_center_point_size = 4,
spat_center_point_border_col = "blue",
spat_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_label_size = 4,
spat_label_fontface = "bold",
show_NN_network = F,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
nn_network_alpha = 0.05,
show_spatial_network = F,
spat_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
spat_network_color = "blue",
spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_grid = F,
spat_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spat_grid_color = "blue",
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
dim_other_point_size = 1,
spat_other_point_size = 1,
spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
dim_show_legend = F,
spat_show_legend = F,
legend_text = 8,

```

```

    legend_symbol_size = 1,
    dim_background_color = "white",
    spat_background_color = "white",
    vor_border_color = "white",
    vor_max_radius = 200,
    vor_alpha = 1,
    axis_text = 8,
    axis_title = 8,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>dim_point_shape</code>	point with border or not (<code>border</code> or <code>no_border</code>)
<code>dim_point_size</code>	size of points in dim. reduction space

```

dim_point_alpha
    transparency of point in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_col
    border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke
    border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_shape
    shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
spat_point_size
    size of spatial points
spat_point_alpha
    transparency of spatial points
spat_point_border_col
    border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke
    border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size
    size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col
    border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke
    stroke size of center point
dim_label_size
    size of the center label
dim_label_fontface
    font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size
    size of the center point
spat_center_point_border_col
    border color of spatial center points
spat_center_point_border_stroke
    border strike size of spatial center points
spat_label_size
    size of the center label
spat_label_fontface
    font of the center label
show_NN_network
    show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use
    type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name
    name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE

```

nn_network_alpha	column to use for alpha of the edges
show_spatial_network	show spatial network
spat_network_name	name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color	color of spatial network
spat_network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_spatial_grid	show spatial grid
spat_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size	size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size	size of not selected spat cells
spat_other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected spat cells
dim_show_legend	show legend of dimension reduction plot
spat_show_legend	show legend of spatial plot
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
dim_background_color	background color of points in dim. reduction space
spat_background_color	background color of spatial points
vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimPlot3D](#)

Other spatial and dimension reduction visualizations: [spatDimPlot3D\(\)](#), [spatDimPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

`spatDimPlot2D(gobject)`

<code>spatDimPlot3D</code>	<i>spatDimPlot3D</i>
----------------------------	----------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
spatDimPlot3D(  
  gobject,  
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = 3,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  sdimz = "sdimz",  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  show_NN_network = FALSE,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  nn_network_color = "lightgray",  
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = T,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  label_size = 16,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 1.5,
```

```

    cell_color = NULL,
    color_as_factor = T,
    cell_color_code = NULL,
    dim_point_size = 3,
    show_spatial_network = F,
    spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
    spatial_network_color = "lightgray",
    spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
    show_spatial_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    spatial_grid_color = NULL,
    spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
    spatial_point_size = 3,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    legend_text_size = 12,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimPlot3D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>plot_alignment</code>	direction to align plot
<code>dim_reduction_to_use</code>	dimension reduction to use
<code>dim_reduction_name</code>	dimension reduction name
<code>dim1_to_use</code>	dimension to use on x-axis
<code>dim2_to_use</code>	dimension to use on y-axis
<code>dim3_to_use</code>	dimension to use on z-axis
<code>sdimx</code>	= spatial dimension to use on x-axis
<code>sdimy</code>	= spatial dimension to use on y-axis
<code>sdimz</code>	= spatial dimension to use on z-axis
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>show_NN_network</code>	show underlying NN network
<code>nn_network_to_use</code>	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
<code>network_name</code>	name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code>
<code>nn_network_color</code>	color of nn network
<code>nn_network_alpha</code>	column to use for alpha of the edges

```

show_cluster_center      show the center of each cluster
show_center_label        provide a label for each cluster
center_point_size        size of the center point
label_size               size of the center label
select_cell_groups        select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells             select subset of cells based on cell IDs
show_other_cells          display not selected cells
other_cell_color          color of not selected cells
other_point_size         size of not selected cells
cell_color               color for cells (see details)
color_as_factor           convert color column to factor
cell_color_code           named vector with colors
dim_point_size           size of points in dim. reduction space
show_spatial_network     show spatial network
spatial_network_name      name of spatial network to use
spatial_network_color     color of spatial network
spatial_network_alpha     alpha of spatial network
show_spatial_grid        show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name         name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color        color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_alpha        alpha of spatial grid
spatial_point_size        size of spatial points
axis_scale               the way to scale the axis
custom_ratio             customize the scale of the plot
x_ticks                  set the number of ticks on the x-axis
y_ticks                  set the number of ticks on the y-axis
z_ticks                  set the number of ticks on the z-axis
legend_text_size          size of legend

```


show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

See Also

Other spatial and dimension reduction visualizations: [spatDimPlot2D\(\)](#), [spatDimPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

spatDimPlot3D(gobject)

spatGenePlot	<i>spatGenePlot</i>
--------------	---------------------

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

spatGenePlot(...)

Arguments

...	Arguments passed on to spatGenePlot2D
gobject	giotto object
show_image	show a tissue background image
gimage	a giotto image
image_name	name of a giotto image
sdimx	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
sdimy	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
expression_values	gene expression values to use
genes	genes to show
cell_color_gradient	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint	midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits	vector with lower and upper limits
show_network	show underlying spatial network

network_color color of spatial network
 spatial_network_name name of spatial network to use
 edge_alpha alpha of edge
 show_grid show spatial grid
 grid_color color of spatial grid
 spatial_grid_name name of spatial grid to use
 midpoint expression midpoint
 scale_alpha_with_expression scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
 point_shape shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
 point_size size of point (cell)
 point_alpha transparency of points
 point_border_col color of border around points
 point_border_stroke stroke size of border around points
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 background_color color of plot background
 vor_border_color border color for voronoi plot
 vor_max_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
 vor_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 show_plot show plots
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name
 in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#) and [spatGenePlot2D](#)

Other spatial gene expression visualizations: [spatGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [spatGenePlot3D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatGenePlot(gobject)
```

spatGenePlot2D

spatGenePlot2D

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatGenePlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  midpoint = 0,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
  point_size = 1,
  point_alpha = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  legend_text = 8,
  background_color = "white",
  vor_border_color = "white",
  vor_alpha = 1,
  vor_max_radius = 200,
  axis_text = 8,
  axis_title = 8,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
```

```

    default_save_name = "spatGenePlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>edge_alpha</code>	alpha of edge
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>midpoint</code>	expression midpoint
<code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code>	scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter
<code>point_shape</code>	shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>point_alpha</code>	transparency of points
<code>point_border_col</code>	color of border around points
<code>point_border_stroke</code>	stroke size of border around points
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>legend_text</code>	size of legend text
<code>background_color</code>	color of plot background
<code>vor_border_color</code>	border color for voronoi plot

vor_alpha	transparency of voronoi 'cells'
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#)

Other spatial gene expression visualizations: [spatGenePlot3D\(\)](#), [spatGenePlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

spatGenePlot3D

spatGenePlot3D

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```

spatGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  show_network = FALSE,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_grid = FALSE,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  point_size = 2,
  show_legend = TRUE,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatGenePlot3D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>genes</code>	genes to show
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>edge_alpha</code>	alpha of edges
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column to select groups
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs

show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	size of not selected cells
genes_high_color	color represents high gene expression
genes_mid_color	color represents middle gene expression
genes_low_color	color represents low gene expression
show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
point_size	size of point (cell)
show_legend	show legend
axis_scale	the way to scale the axis
custom_ratio	customize the scale of the plot
x_ticks	set the number of ticks on the x-axis
y_ticks	set the number of ticks on the y-axis
z_ticks	set the number of ticks on the z-axis
show_plot	show plots
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other spatial gene expression visualizations: [spatGenePlot2D\(\)](#), [spatGenePlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

spatialAEH	<i>spatialAEH</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

Compute spatial variable genes with spatialDE method

Usage

```
spatialAEH(
  gobject = NULL,
  SpatialDE_results = NULL,
  name_pattern = "AEH_patterns",
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  pattern_num = 6,
  l = 1.05,
  python_path = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>SpatialDE_results</code>	results of SpatialDE function
<code>name_pattern</code>	name for the computed spatial patterns
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>pattern_num</code>	number of spatial patterns to look for
<code>l</code>	lengthscale
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>return_gobject</code>	show plot

Details

This function is a wrapper for the SpatialAEH method implemented in the ...

Value

An updated giotto object

spatialDE

*spatialDE***Description**

Compute spatial variable genes with spatialDE method

Usage

```
spatialDE(
  gobject = NULL,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  size = c(4, 2, 1),
  color = c("blue", "green", "red"),
  sig_alpha = 0.5,
  unsig_alpha = 0.5,
  python_path = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "SpatialDE"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>size</code>	size of plot
<code>color</code>	low/medium/high color scheme for plot
<code>sig_alpha</code>	alpha value for significance
<code>unsig_alpha</code>	alpha value for unsignificance
<code>python_path</code>	specify specific path to python if required
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

This function is a wrapper for the SpatialDE method implemented in the ...

Value

a list of data.frames with results and plot (optional)

spatNetwDistributions *spatNetwDistributionsDistance*

Description

This function return histograms displaying the distance distribution for each spatial k-neighbor

Usage

```
spatNetwDistributions(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  distribution = c("distance", "k_neighbors"),
  hist_bins = 30,
  test_distance_limit = NULL,
  ncol = 1,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatNetwDistributions"
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network
<code>distribution</code>	show the distribution of cell-to-cell distance or number of k neighbors
<code>hist_bins</code>	number of binds to use for the histogram
<code>test_distance_limit</code>	effect of different distance threshold on k-neighbors
<code>ncol</code>	number of columns to visualize the histograms in
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, alternatively change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Details

The **distance** option shows the spatial distance distribution for each nearest neighbor rank (1st, 2nd, 3th, ... neighbor). With this option the user can also test the effect of a distance limit on the spatial network. This distance limit can be used to remove neighbor cells that are considered to far away. The **k_neighbors** option shows the number of k neighbors distribution over all cells.

Value

ggplot plot

Examples

```
spatNetwDistributionsDistance(gobject)
```

spatNetwDistributionsDistance

spatNetwDistributionsDistance

Description

This function return histograms displaying the distance distribution for each spatial k-neighbor

Usage

```
spatNetwDistributionsDistance(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  hist_bins = 30,  
  test_distance_limit = NULL,  
  ncol = 1,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "spatNetwDistributionsDistance"  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	Giotto object
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network
hist_bins	number of binds to use for the histogram
test_distance_limit	effect of different distance threshold on k-neighbors
ncol	number of columns to visualize the histograms in
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
default_save_name	default save name for saving, alternatively change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot plot

Examples

```
spatNetwDistributionsDistance(gobject)
```

```
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors
```

```
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors
```

Description

This function returns a histogram displaying the number of k-neighbors distribution for each cell

Usage

```
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  hist_bins = 30,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors"  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network
<code>hist_bins</code>	number of binds to use for the histogram
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, alternatively change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

ggplot plot

Examples

```
spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors(gobject)
```

spatPlot

*spatPlot***Description**

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot(...)
```

Arguments

... Arguments passed on to [spatPlot2D](#)

`gobject` giotto object

`show_image` show a tissue background image

`gimage` a giotto image

`image_name` name of a giotto image

`group_by` create multiple plots based on cell annotation column

`group_by_subset` subset the `group_by` factor column

`sdimx` x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')

`sdimy` y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')

`spat_enr_names` names of spatial enrichment results to include

`cell_color` color for cells (see details)

`color_as_factor` convert color column to factor

`cell_color_code` named vector with colors

`cell_color_gradient` vector with 3 colors for numeric data

`gradient_midpoint` midpoint for color gradient

`gradient_limits` vector with lower and upper limits

`select_cell_groups` select subset of cells/clusters based on `cell_color` parameter

`select_cells` select subset of cells based on cell IDs

`point_shape` shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)

`point_size` size of point (cell)

`point_alpha` transparency of point

`point_border_col` color of border around points

`point_border_stroke` stroke size of border around points

`show_cluster_center` plot center of selected clusters

`show_center_label` plot label of selected clusters

`center_point_size` size of center points

`center_point_border_col` border color of center points

`center_point_border_stroke` border stroke size of center points

`label_size` size of labels

`label_fontface` font of labels

`show_network` show underlying spatial network

`spatial_network_name` name of spatial network to use

network_color color of spatial network
 network_alpha alpha of spatial network
 show_grid show spatial grid
 spatial_grid_name name of spatial grid to use
 grid_color color of spatial grid
 show_other_cells display not selected cells
 other_cell_color color of not selected cells
 other_point_size point size of not selected cells
 other_cells_alpha alpha of not selected cells
 coord_fix_ratio fix ratio between x and y-axis
 title title of plot
 show_legend show legend
 legend_text size of legend text
 legend_symbol_size size of legend symbols
 background_color color of plot background
 vor_border_color border color for voronoi plot
 vor_max_radius maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'
 vor_alpha transparency of voronoi 'cells'
 axis_text size of axis text
 axis_title size of axis title
 cow_n_col cowplot param: how many columns
 cow_rel_h cowplot param: relative height
 cow_rel_w cowplot param: relative width
 cow_align cowplot param: how to align
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name
 in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

Other spatial visualizations: [spatPlot2D\(\)](#), [spatPlot3D\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatPlot(gobject)
```

spatPlot2D

spatPlot2D

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot2D(
  gobject,
  show_image = F,
  gimage = NULL,
  image_name = "image",
  group_by = NULL,
  group_by_subset = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_shape = c("border", "no_border", "voronoi"),
  point_size = 3,
  point_alpha = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = F,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  show_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  show_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  grid_color = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
  coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
```

```

title = NULL,
show_legend = T,
legend_text = 8,
legend_symbol_size = 1,
background_color = "white",
vor_border_color = "white",
vor_max_radius = 200,
vor_alpha = 1,
axis_text = 8,
axis_title = 8,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>show_image</code>	show a tissue background image
<code>gimage</code>	a giotto image
<code>image_name</code>	name of a giotto image
<code>group_by</code>	create multiple plots based on cell annotation column
<code>group_by_subset</code>	subset the <code>group_by</code> factor column
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>color_as_factor</code>	convert color column to factor
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>cell_color_gradient</code>	vector with 3 colors for numeric data
<code>gradient_midpoint</code>	midpoint for color gradient
<code>gradient_limits</code>	vector with lower and upper limits
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>point_shape</code>	shape of points (border, no_border or voronoi)
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)

point_alpha	transparancy of point
point_border_col	color of border around points
point_border_stroke	stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center	plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label	plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size	size of center points
center_point_border_col	border color of center points
center_point_border_stroke	border stroke size of center points
label_size	size of labels
label_fontface	font of labels
show_network	show underlying spatial network
spatial_network_name	name of spatial network to use
network_color	color of spatial network
network_alpha	alpha of spatial network
show_grid	show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name	name of spatial grid to use
grid_color	color of spatial grid
show_other_cells	display not selected cells
other_cell_color	color of not selected cells
other_point_size	point size of not selected cells
other_cells_alpha	alpha of not selected cells
coord_fix_ratio	fix ratio between x and y-axis
title	title of plot
show_legend	show legend
legend_text	size of legend text
legend_symbol_size	size of legend symbols
background_color	color of plot background
vor_border_color	border color for voronoi plot
vor_max_radius	maximum radius for voronoi 'cells'

vor_alpha	transparancy of voronoi 'cells'
axis_text	size of axis text
axis_title	size of axis title
cow_n_col	cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h	cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w	cowplot param: relative width
cow_align	cowplot param: how to align
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object
save_plot	directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
default_save_name	default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)
Other spatial visualizations: [spatPlot3D\(\)](#), [spatPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

spatPlot2D(gobject)

spatPlot3D	<i>spatPlot3D</i>
------------	-------------------

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot3D(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  sdimz = "sdimz",  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  cell_color = NULL,
```

```

    cell_color_code = NULL,
    select_cell_groups = NULL,
    select_cells = NULL,
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    other_point_size = 0.5,
    other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
    show_network = F,
    spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
    network_color = NULL,
    network_alpha = 1,
    show_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    grid_color = NULL,
    grid_alpha = 1,
    title = "",
    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spat3D"
)

```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>sdimx</code>	x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx')
<code>sdimy</code>	y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>sdimz</code>	z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy')
<code>spat_enr_names</code>	names of spatial enrichment results to include
<code>point_size</code>	size of point (cell)
<code>cell_color</code>	color for cells (see details)
<code>cell_color_code</code>	named vector with colors
<code>select_cell_groups</code>	select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter
<code>select_cells</code>	select subset of cells based on cell IDs
<code>show_other_cells</code>	display not selected cells
<code>other_cell_color</code>	color of not selected cells
<code>other_point_size</code>	size of not selected cells

<code>other_cell_alpha</code>	alpha of not selected cells
<code>show_network</code>	show underlying spatial network
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	name of spatial network to use
<code>network_color</code>	color of spatial network
<code>network_alpha</code>	opacity of spatial network
<code>show_grid</code>	show spatial grid
<code>spatial_grid_name</code>	name of spatial grid to use
<code>grid_color</code>	color of spatial grid
<code>grid_alpha</code>	opacity of spatial grid
<code>title</code>	title of plot
<code>show_legend</code>	show legend
<code>axis_scale</code>	the way to scale the axis
<code>custom_ratio</code>	customize the scale of the plot
<code>x_ticks</code>	set the number of ticks on the x-axis
<code>y_ticks</code>	set the number of ticks on the y-axis
<code>z_ticks</code>	set the number of ticks on the z-axis
<code>show_plot</code>	show plot
<code>return_plot</code>	return ggplot object
<code>save_plot</code>	directly save the plot [boolean]
<code>save_param</code>	list of saving parameters, see showSaveParameters
<code>default_save_name</code>	default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code>

Value

ggplot

See Also

Other spatial visualizations: [spatPlot2D\(\)](#), [spatPlot\(\)](#)

Examples

```
spatPlot3D(gobject)
```

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores
      specificCellCellcommunicationScores
```

Description

Specific Cell-Cell communication scores based on spatial expression of interacting cells

Usage

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "Delaunay_network",
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 100,
  cell_type_1 = "astrocyte",
  cell_type_2 = "endothelial",
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  min_observations = 2,
  detailed = FALSE,
  adjust_method = c("fdr", "bonferroni", "BH", "holm", "hochberg", "hommel", "BY",
    "none"),
  adjust_target = c("genes", "cells"),
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object to use
<code>spatial_network_name</code>	spatial network to use for identifying interacting cells
<code>cluster_column</code>	cluster column with cell type information
<code>random_iter</code>	number of iterations
<code>cell_type_1</code>	first cell type
<code>cell_type_2</code>	second cell type
<code>gene_set_1</code>	first specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>gene_set_2</code>	second specific gene set from gene pairs
<code>log2FC_addendum</code>	addendum to add when calculating log2FC
<code>min_observations</code>	minimum number of interactions needed to be considered
<code>detailed</code>	provide more detailed information (random variance and z-score)
<code>adjust_method</code>	which method to adjust p-values
<code>adjust_target</code>	adjust multiple hypotheses at the cell or gene level
<code>verbose</code>	verbose

Details

Statistical framework to identify if pairs of genes (such as ligand-receptor combinations) are expressed at higher levels than expected based on a reshuffled null distribution of gene expression values in cells that are spatially in proximity to eachother.

- LR_comb: Pair of ligand and receptor
- lig_cell_type: cell type to assess expression level of ligand
- lig_expr: average expression of ligand in lig_cell_type
- ligand: ligand name
- rec_cell_type: cell type to assess expression level of receptor
- rec_expr: average expression of receptor in rec_cell_type
- receptor: receptor name
- LR_expr: combined average ligand and receptor expression
- lig_nr: total number of cells from lig_cell_type that spatially interact with cells from rec_cell_type
- rec_nr: total number of cells from rec_cell_type that spatially interact with cells from lig_cell_type
- rand_expr: average combined ligand and receptor expression from random spatial permutations
- av_diff: average difference between LR_expr and rand_expr over all random spatial permutations
- sd_diff: (optional) standard deviation of the difference between LR_expr and rand_expr over all random spatial permutations
- z_score: (optional) z-score
- log2fc: log2 fold-change (LR_expr/rand_expr)
- pvalue: p-value
- LR_cell_comb: cell type pair combination
- p.adj: adjusted p-value
- PI: significanc score: $\log_2fc * -\log_{10}(p.adj)$

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on spatial interaction

Examples

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores(gobject)
```

```
split_dendrogram_in_two
    split_dendrogram_in_two
```

Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

Usage

```
split_dendrogram_in_two(dend)
```

Arguments

dend dendrogram object

Value

list of two dendrograms and height of node

Examples

```
split_dendrogram_in_two(dend)
```

```
stitchFieldCoordinates
    stitchFieldCoordinates
```

Description

Helper function to stitch field coordinates together to form one complete picture

Usage

```
stitchFieldCoordinates(
  location_file,
  offset_file,
  cumulate_offset_x = F,
  cumulate_offset_y = F,
  field_col = "Field of View",
  X_coord_col = "X",
  Y_coord_col = "Y",
  reverse_final_x = F,
  reverse_final_y = T
)
```

Arguments

location_file	location dataframe with X and Y coordinates
offset_file	dataframe that describes the offset for each field (see details)
cumulate_offset_x	(boolean) Do the x-axis offset values need to be cumulated?
cumulate_offset_y	(boolean) Do the y-axis offset values need to be cumulated?
field_col	column that indicates the field within the location_file
X_coord_col	column that indicates the x coordinates
Y_coord_col	column that indicates the x coordinates
reverse_final_x	(boolean) Do the final x coordinates need to be reversed?
reverse_final_y	(boolean) Do the final y coordinates need to be reversed?

Details

Stitching of fields:

- 1. have cell locations: at least 3 columns: field, X, Y
- 2. create offset file: offset file has 3 columns: field, x_offset, y_offset
- 3. create new cell location file by stitching original cell locations with `stitchFieldCoordinates`
- 4. provide new cell location file to `createGiottoObject`

Value

Updated location dataframe with new X ['X_final'] and Y ['Y_final'] coordinates

`stitchTileCoordinates` *stitchTileCoordinates*

Description

Helper function to stitch tile coordinates together to form one complete picture

Usage

```
stitchTileCoordinates(location_file, Xtilespan, Ytilespan)
```

Arguments

location_file	location dataframe with X and Y coordinates
Xtilespan	numerical value specifying the width of each tile
Ytilespan	numerical value specifying the height of each tile

subClusterCells	<i>subClusterCells</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

subcluster cells

Usage

```
subClusterCells(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_clus",
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_cov = 1, expression_values =
    "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 1,
  n_iterations = 1000,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
name	name for new clustering result
cluster_method	clustering method to use
cluster_column	cluster column to subcluster
selected_clusters	only do subclustering on these clusters
hvg_param	parameters for calculateHVG
hvg_min_perc_cells	threshold for detection in min percentage of cells
hvg_mean_expr_det	threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection
use_all_genes_as_hvg	forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA

min_nr_of_hvg	minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA
pca_param	parameters for runPCA
nn_param	parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork
k_neighbors	number of k for createNearestNetwork
resolution	resolution
n_iterations	number of iterations to run the Leiden algorithm.
gamma	gamma
omega	omega
python_path	specify specific path to python if required
nn_network_to_use	type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name	name of NN network to use
return_gobject	boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
verbose	verbose

Details

This function performs subclustering on selected clusters. The systematic steps are:

- 1. subset Giotto object
- 2. identify highly variable genes
- 3. run PCA
- 4. create nearest neighbouring network
- 5. do clustering

Value

giotto object with new subclusters appended to cell metadata

See Also

[doLouvainCluster_multinet](#), [doLouvainCluster_community](#) and @seealso [doLeidenCluster](#)

Examples

```
subClusterCells(gobject)
```

`subsetGiotto`*subsetGiotto*

Description

subsets Giotto object including previous analyses.

Usage

```
subsetGiotto(gobject, cell_ids = NULL, gene_ids = NULL, verbose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>cell_ids</code>	cell IDs to keep
<code>gene_ids</code>	gene IDs to keep
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
subsetGiotto(gobject)
```

`subsetGiottoLocs`*subsetGiottoLocs*

Description

subsets Giotto object based on spatial locations

Usage

```
subsetGiottoLocs(  
  gobject,  
  x_max = NULL,  
  x_min = NULL,  
  y_max = NULL,  
  y_min = NULL,  
  z_max = NULL,  
  z_min = NULL,  
  return_gobject = T,  
  verbose = FALSE  
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>x_max</code>	maximum x-coordinate
<code>x_min</code>	minimum x-coordinate
<code>y_max</code>	maximum y-coordinate
<code>y_min</code>	minimum y-coordinate
<code>z_max</code>	maximum z-coordinate
<code>z_min</code>	minimum z-coordinate
<code>return_gobject</code>	return Giotto object
<code>verbose</code>	be verbose

Details

if `return_gobject = FALSE`, then a filtered combined metadata `data.table` will be returned

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
subsetGiottoLocs(gobject)
```

trendSceek

trendSceek

Description

Compute spatial variable genes with trendsceek method

Usage

```
trendSceek(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "raw"),
  subset_genes = NULL,
  nrand = 100,
  ncores = 8,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	Giotto object
<code>expression_values</code>	gene expression values to use
<code>subset_genes</code>	subset of genes to run trendsceek on
<code>nrand</code>	An integer specifying the number of random resamplings of the mark distribution as to create the null-distribution.
<code>ncores</code>	An integer specifying the number of cores to be used by BiocParallel
<code>...</code>	Additional parameters to the trendSceek_test function

Details

This function is a wrapper for the trendsceek_test method implemented in the trendsceek package

Value

data.frame with trendsceek spatial genes results

updateGiottoImage	<i>updateGiottoImage</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

Updates the boundaries of a giotto image attached to a giotto object

Usage

```
updateGiottoImage(  
  gobject,  
  image_name,  
  xmax_adj = 0,  
  xmin_adj = 0,  
  ymax_adj = 0,  
  ymin_adj = 0,  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
image_name	spatial locations
xmax_adj	adjustment of the maximum x-value to align the image
xmin_adj	adjustment of the minimum x-value to align the image
ymax_adj	adjustment of the maximum y-value to align the image
ymin_adj	adjustment of the minimum y-value to align the image
return_gobject	return a giotto object

Value

a giotto object or an updated giotto image if return_gobject = F

Examples

```
updateGiottoImage(gobject)
```

viewHMRFresults	<i>viewHMRFresults</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRFresults(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = FALSE,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
HMRFoutput	HMRF output from doHMRF
k	number of HMRF domains
betas_to_view	results from different betas that you want to view
third_dim	3D data (boolean)
...	additional paramters (see details)

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[spatPlot2D](#) and [spatPlot3D](#)

viewHMRFresults2D	<i>viewHMRFresults2D</i>
-------------------	--------------------------

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRFresults2D(gobject, HMRFoutput, k = NULL, betas_to_view = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>HMRFoutput</code>	HMRF output from doHMRF
<code>k</code>	number of HMRF domains
<code>betas_to_view</code>	results from different betas that you want to view
<code>...</code>	additional parameters to <code>spatPlot2D()</code>

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[spatPlot2D](#)

<code>viewHMRFresults3D</code>	<i><code>viewHMRFresults3D</code></i>
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRFresults3D(gobject, HMRFoutput, k = NULL, betas_to_view = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>gobject</code>	giotto object
<code>HMRFoutput</code>	HMRF output from doHMRF
<code>k</code>	number of HMRF domains
<code>betas_to_view</code>	results from different betas that you want to view
<code>...</code>	additional parameters to <code>spatPlot3D()</code>

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

violinPlot

violinPlot

Description

Creates violinplot for selected clusters

Usage

```
violinPlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column,
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  color_violin = c("genes", "cluster"),
  cluster_color_code = NULL,
  strip_position = c("top", "right", "left", "bottom"),
  strip_text = 7,
  axis_text_x_size = 10,
  axis_text_y_size = 6,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "violinPlot"
)
```

Arguments

gobject	giotto object
expression_values	expression values to use
genes	genes to plot
cluster_column	name of column to use for clusters
cluster_custom_order	custom order of clusters
color_violin	color violin according to genes or clusters
cluster_color_code	color code for clusters
strip_position	position of gene labels
strip_text	size of strip text
axis_text_x_size	size of x-axis text
axis_text_y_size	size of y-axis text
show_plot	show plot
return_plot	return ggplot object

save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters, see [showSaveParameters](#)
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
violinPlot(gobject)
```

writeHMRResults	<i>writeHMRResults</i>
-----------------	------------------------

Description

write results from doHMRF to a data.table.

Usage

```
writeHMRResults(
  gobject,
  HMRFoutput,
  k = NULL,
  betas_to_view = NULL,
  print_command = F
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 HMRFoutput HMRF output from doHMRF
 k k to write results for
 betas_to_view results from different betas that you want to view
 print_command see the python command

Value

data.table with HMRF results for each b and the selected k

Examples

```
writeHMRResults(gobject)
```

```
write_giotto_viewer_annotation  
    write_giotto_viewer_annotation
```

Description

write out factor-like annotation data from a giotto object for the Viewer

Usage

```
write_giotto_viewer_annotation(  
  annotation,  
  annot_name = "test",  
  output_directory = getwd()  
)
```

Arguments

annotation	annotation from the data.table from giotto object
annot_name	name of the annotation
output_directory	directory where to save the files

Value

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

```
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction  
    write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction
```

Description

write out dimensional reduction data from a giotto object for the Viewer

Usage

```
write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction(  
  dim_reduction_cell,  
  dim_red = NULL,  
  dim_red_name = NULL,  
  dim_red_rounding = NULL,  
  dim_red_rescale = c(-20, 20),  
  output_directory = getwd()  
)
```

Arguments

dim_reduction_cell	dimension reduction slot from giotto object
dim_red	high level name of dimension reduction
dim_red_name	specific name of dimension reduction to use
dim_red_rounding	numerical indicating how to round the coordinates
dim_red_rescale	numericals to rescale the coordinates
output_directory	directory where to save the files

Value

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

```
write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation
      write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation
```

Description

write out numeric annotation data from a giotto object for the Viewer

Usage

```
write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation(
  annotation,
  annot_name = "test",
  output_directory = getwd()
)
```

Arguments

annotation	annotation from the data.table from giotto object
annot_name	name of the annotation
output_directory	directory where to save the files

Value

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

Index

- *Topic **giotto**,
 - giotto-class, [134](#)
- *Topic **giotto**
 - createGiottoObject, [48](#)
- *Topic **object**
 - giotto-class, [134](#)
- [addCellIntMetadata](#), [7](#)
- [addCellMetadata](#), [8](#), [49](#)
- [addCellStatistics](#), [9](#), [15](#)
- [addGeneMetadata](#), [10](#), [49](#)
- [addGenesPerc](#), [10](#)
- [addGeneStatistics](#), [11](#), [15](#)
- [addGiottoImage](#), [12](#)
- [addGiottoImageToSpatPlot](#), [12](#)
- [addHMRF](#), [13](#)
- [addNetworkLayout](#), [13](#)
- [addStatistics](#), [14](#)
- [adjustGiottoMatrix](#), [15](#)
- [all_plots_save_function](#), [21](#), [24](#), [26](#), [27](#),
[29](#), [31](#), [33](#), [113](#), [115](#), [138](#), [147](#),
[149–151](#), [153–156](#), [160](#), [161](#), [170](#),
[171](#), [212](#), [258–260](#)
- [annotateGiotto](#), [16](#)
- [annotateSpatialGrid](#), [17](#)
- [annotateSpatialNetwork](#), [17](#)
- [average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups](#),
[18](#)
- [binSpect](#), [19](#)
- [calculateHVG](#), [20](#), [193](#), [198](#), [199](#)
- [calculateMetaTable](#), [22](#)
- [calculateMetaTableCells](#), [23](#)
- [cellProximityBarplot](#), [23](#)
- [cellProximityEnrichment](#), [24](#)
- [cellProximityHeatmap](#), [25](#)
- [cellProximityNetwork](#), [26](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot](#), [28](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot2D](#), [28](#), [29](#), [29](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot3D](#), [29](#), [31](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot](#), [33](#)
- [changeGiottoInstructions](#), [36](#)
- [changeImageBg](#), [36](#)
- [cluster_walktrap](#), [106](#)
- [clusterCells](#), [37](#)
- [clusterSpatialCorGenes](#), [40](#)
- [combCCcom](#), [40](#), [170–172](#)
- [combineCellProximityGenes](#), [41](#)
- [combineCPG](#), [42](#)
- [combineMetadata](#), [44](#)
- [convertEnsemblToGeneSymbol](#), [44](#)
- [create_average_detection_DT](#), [61](#)
- [create_average_DT](#), [62](#)
- [create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs](#), [62](#)
- [create_crossSection_object](#), [63](#)
- [create_screepplot](#), [64](#)
- [createCrossSection](#), [45](#)
- [createGiottoImage](#), [12](#), [46](#)
- [createGiottoInstructions](#), [47](#), [49](#), [50](#)
- [createGiottoObject](#), [48](#), [272](#)
- [createGiottoVisiumObject](#), [50](#)
- [createHeatmap_DT](#), [51](#)
- [createMetagenes](#), [52](#)
- [createNearestNetwork](#), [53](#)
- [createSpatialDefaultGrid](#), [55](#), [58](#)
- [createSpatialDelaunayNetwork](#), [56](#)
- [createSpatialEnrich](#), [57](#), [109](#)
- [createSpatialGrid](#), [58](#)
- [createSpatialKNNnetwork](#), [59](#)
- [createSpatialNetwork](#), [60](#), [70](#)
- [crossSectionGenePlot](#), [65](#)
- [crossSectionGenePlot3D](#), [66](#)
- [crossSectionPlot](#), [67](#), [67](#)
- [crossSectionPlot3D](#), [68](#)
- [decide_cluster_order](#), [69](#)
- [delaunayn](#), [57](#)
- [deldir](#), [57](#)
- [detectSpatialCorGenes](#), [70](#)
- [detectSpatialPatterns](#), [71](#)
- [dimCellPlot](#), [72](#), [76](#)
- [dimCellPlot2D](#), [72](#), [73](#), [74](#)
- [dimGenePlot](#), [77](#), [80](#), [82](#)
- [dimGenePlot2D](#), [77](#), [78](#), [78](#), [82](#)
- [dimGenePlot3D](#), [78](#), [80](#), [81](#)
- [dimPlot](#), [83](#), [87](#), [89](#), [166](#), [168](#), [169](#), [175](#), [177](#),
[178](#), [180](#), [182](#), [184](#)

- dimPlot2D, [83](#), [84](#), [84](#), [89](#), [165–169](#), [174–182](#), [184](#)
- dimPlot3D, [76](#), [84](#), [87](#), [88](#), [166](#), [168](#), [169](#), [175](#), [177](#), [178](#), [180](#), [182–184](#)
- doHclust, [39](#), [90](#)
- doHMRF, [91](#)
- doKmeans, [39](#), [93](#)
- doLeidenCluster, [39](#), [94](#), [97](#), [274](#)
- doLeidenSubCluster, [95](#)
- doLouvainCluster, [39](#), [97](#)
- doLouvainCluster_community, [39](#), [98](#), [98](#), [102](#), [104](#), [274](#)
- doLouvainCluster_multinet, [39](#), [98](#), [99](#), [102](#), [105](#), [274](#)
- doLouvainSubCluster, [100](#)
- doLouvainSubCluster_community, [102](#)
- doLouvainSubCluster_multinet, [104](#)
- doRandomWalkCluster, [39](#), [106](#)
- doSNNcluster, [39](#), [107](#)
- estimateImageBg, [108](#)
- exportGiottoViewer, [108](#)
- exprCellCellcom, [109](#), [147](#), [148](#)
- fDataDT, [111](#)
- filterCellProximityGenes, [111](#)
- filterCombinations, [112](#), [116](#)
- filterCPG, [113](#)
- filterDistributions, [114](#)
- filterGiotto, [116](#)
- findCellProximityGenes, [117](#)
- findCPG, [118](#)
- findGiniMarkers, [120](#), [122](#), [124](#)
- findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all, [122](#), [125](#)
- findMarkers, [123](#), [129](#)
- findMarkers_one_vs_all, [124](#)
- findMastMarkers, [124](#), [126](#), [127](#)
- findMastMarkers_one_vs_all, [125](#), [127](#)
- findNetworkNeighbors, [128](#)
- findScranMarkers, [124](#), [128](#), [130](#)
- findScranMarkers_one_vs_all, [125](#), [129](#)
- get10Xmatrix, [130](#)
- getClusterSimilarity, [131](#)
- getDendrogramSplits, [132](#)
- getDistinctColors, [133](#)
- getGiottoImage, [133](#)
- getSpatialDataset, [134](#)
- giotto (giotto-class), [134](#)
- giotto-class, [134](#)
- glouvain_ml, [100](#)
- hclust, [91](#)
- Heatmap, [136](#)
- heatmSpatialCorGenes, [135](#)
- hyperGeometricEnrich, [136](#)
- insertCrossSectionGenePlot3D, [137](#)
- insertCrossSectionSpatPlot3D, [138](#)
- jackstrawPlot, [139](#)
- kmeans, [94](#)
- kNN, [54](#)
- layout_with_drl, [14](#)
- loadHMRF, [141](#)
- makeSignMatrixPAGE, [142](#), [192](#)
- makeSignMatrixRank, [142](#), [194](#)
- mergeClusters, [143](#)
- normalizeGiotto, [144](#)
- PAGEEnrich, [142](#), [145](#)
- PCA, [193](#)
- pDataDT, [17](#), [146](#)
- permutationPA, [140](#), [215](#)
- plotCCcomDotplot, [147](#)
- plotCCcomHeatmap, [148](#)
- plotCellProximityGenes, [149](#)
- plotCombineCCcom, [150](#)
- plotCombineCellCellCommunication, [152](#)
- plotCombineCellProximityGenes, [153](#)
- plotCombineCPG, [154](#)
- plotCPG, [155](#)
- plotGiottoImage, [157](#)
- plotHeatmap, [157](#)
- plotICG, [159](#)
- plotInteractionChangedGenes, [160](#)
- plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap, [161](#), [164](#)
- plotMetaDataHeatmap, [162](#), [163](#)
- plotPCA, [84](#), [87](#), [89](#), [165](#), [168](#), [169](#), [175](#), [177](#), [178](#), [180](#), [182](#), [184](#)
- plotPCA_2D, [84](#), [87](#), [89](#), [166](#), [166](#), [169](#), [175](#), [177](#), [178](#), [180](#), [182](#), [184](#)
- plotPCA_3D, [84](#), [87](#), [89](#), [166](#), [168](#), [168](#), [175](#), [177](#), [178](#), [180](#), [182](#), [184](#)
- plotRankSpatvsExpr, [170](#)
- plotRecovery, [171](#)
- plotRecovery_sub, [172](#)
- plotStatDelaunayNetwork, [172](#)
- plotTSNE, [84](#), [87](#), [89](#), [166](#), [168](#), [169](#), [173](#), [177](#), [178](#), [180](#), [182](#), [184](#)
- plotTSNE_2D, [84](#), [87](#), [89](#), [166](#), [168](#), [169](#), [175](#), [175](#), [178](#), [180](#), [182](#), [184](#)

- plotTSNE_3D, [84, 87, 89, 166, 168, 169, 175, 177, 177, 180, 182, 184](#)
- plotUMAP, [84, 87, 89, 166, 168, 169, 175, 177, 178, 179, 182, 184](#)
- plotUMAP_2D, [84, 87, 89, 166, 168, 169, 175, 177, 178, 180, 181, 184](#)
- plotUMAP_3D, [84, 87, 89, 166, 168, 169, 175, 177, 178, 180, 182, 183](#)
- prcomp_irlba, [193](#)
- print.giotto, [184](#)
- rankEnrich, [143, 185](#)
- rankSpatialCorGroups, [185](#)
- readExprMatrix, [186](#)
- readGiottoInstructions, [187](#)
- removeBatchEffect, [15](#)
- removeCellAnnotation, [187](#)
- removeGeneAnnotation, [188](#)
- replaceGiottoInstructions, [188](#)
- Rtsne, [198](#)
- runDWLSDeconv, [189](#)
- runHyperGeometricEnrich, [136, 190, 196](#)
- runPAGEEnrich, [146, 191, 196](#)
- runPCA, [192, 201](#)
- runRankEnrich, [185, 193, 196](#)
- runSpatialDeconv, [194](#)
- runSpatialEnrich, [57, 195](#)
- runtSNE, [196](#)
- runUMAP, [198](#)
- screePlot, [200](#)
- selectPatternGenes, [202](#)
- show,giotto-method, [203](#)
- showClusterDendrogram, [203](#)
- showClusterHeatmap, [204](#)
- showGiottoImageNames, [133, 157, 205](#)
- showGiottoInstructions, [206](#)
- showGrids, [17, 206](#)
- showNetworks, [207](#)
- showPattern, [207](#)
- showPattern2D, [207, 208, 208](#)
- showPattern3D, [209](#)
- showPatternGenes, [210](#)
- showProcessingSteps, [212](#)
- showSaveParameters, [73, 76, 78, 80, 82, 84, 87, 89, 136, 158, 162, 164, 166, 168, 169, 173, 175, 177, 178, 180, 182, 184, 186, 204, 205, 208–211, 212, 219, 223, 225, 230, 232, 235, 238, 241, 245, 249, 250, 253, 255, 257, 262, 266, 268, 281](#)
- showSpatialCorGenes, [71, 213](#)
- signPCA, [214](#)
- silhouetteRank, [215](#)
- sNN, [54](#)
- sNNclust, [107](#)
- spatCellCellCom, [41](#)
- spatCellCellcom, [147, 148, 216](#)
- spatCellPlot, [218, 223](#)
- spatCellPlot2D, [218, 219, 220](#)
- spatDimCellPlot, [223, 230](#)
- spatDimCellPlot2D, [223, 225, 225](#)
- spatDimGenePlot, [230, 236, 239](#)
- spatDimGenePlot2D, [231, 232, 232, 239](#)
- spatDimGenePlot3D, [232, 236, 236](#)
- spatDimPlot, [239, 246, 249](#)
- spatDimPlot2D, [239, 241, 241, 249](#)
- spatDimPlot3D, [241, 246, 246](#)
- spatGenePlot, [249, 253, 255](#)
- spatGenePlot2D, [65, 249, 250, 251, 255](#)
- spatGenePlot3D, [65, 250, 253, 253](#)
- spatialAEH, [256](#)
- SpatialDE, [256](#)
- spatialDE, [257](#)
- spatNetwDistributions, [258](#)
- spatNetwDistributionsDistance, [259](#)
- spatNetwDistributionsKneighbors, [260](#)
- spatPlot, [261, 266, 268](#)
- spatPlot2D, [261, 262, 263, 268, 278, 279](#)
- spatPlot3D, [262, 266, 266, 278, 279](#)
- specificCellCellcommunicationScores, [269](#)
- split_dendrogram_in_two, [271](#)
- stitchFieldCoordinates, [49, 271](#)
- stitchTileCoordinates, [272](#)
- subClusterCells, [273](#)
- subsetGiotto, [275](#)
- subsetGiottoLocs, [275](#)
- trendSceek, [276](#)
- trendsceek_test, [276](#)
- triangulate, [57](#)
- umap, [199](#)
- updateGiottoImage, [277](#)
- viewHMRResults, [278](#)
- viewHMRResults2D, [278](#)
- viewHMRResults3D, [279](#)
- violinPlot, [280](#)
- write_giotto_viewer_annotation, [282](#)
- write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction, [282](#)
- write_giotto_viewer_numeric_annotation, [283](#)
- writeHMRResults, [281](#)

zlm, [126](#)